

# THAI

## BASIC COURSE

### Volume 2



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

**1970**

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE  
BASIC COURSE SERIES  
Edited by  
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

---

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office  
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price \$3.75

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Volume 2

LESSON 21.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	327
Questions on the Basic Dialog .....	328
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	328
Grammar Notes .....	329
1. Responses to <u>paj jannaj</u> .....	329
2. Use of <u>phaa</u> ... <u>paj</u> and <u>aw</u> ... <u>paj</u> .....	330
3. <u>maa naan léew</u> Used to Indicate 'Action long in Process' .....	330
DRILLS .....	331
EXERCISES .....	344
VOCABULARY .....	345
LESSON 22.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	347
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	348
Grammar Notes .....	349
1. <u>thîi</u> in Dates .....	349
2. <u>jaak</u> + <u>hâj</u> + Verb Phrase .....	350
DRILLS .....	351
EXERCISES .....	366
VOCABULARY .....	367
LESSON 23.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	369
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	370
Grammar Notes .....	370
1. Aspect Particles ( <u>jùu</u> , <u>dâj</u> , <u>léew</u> ) .....	370
2. <u>thammaj</u> , Used to Indicate 'purpose' or 'explanation' ' .....	372
3. <u>thÿn</u> with <u>thammaj</u> .....	373
DRILLS .....	373
COMPREHENSION EXERCISES .....	382
EXERCISES .....	384
VOCABULARY .....	384

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

LESSON 24.	
BASIC EPISODE (Part I) .....	385
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) .....	385
DRILLS .....	386
 BASIC EPISODE (Part II) .....	 394
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) .....	395
EXERCISES .....	395
VOCABULARY .....	396
 LESSON 25.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	397
Vocabulary Notes .....	398
DRILLS .....	400
EXERCISES .....	414
VOCABULARY .....	414
 LESSON 26.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	416
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	417
Grammar Notes .....	417
1. <u>hâj</u> + Object + Recipient .....	418
2. Distributive Constructions .....	418
3. <u>kô</u> in Parallel Sentence Constructions .....	419
4. <u>thán</u> + Classifier Phrase .....	419
5. Question + <u>dii</u> as a Request for Advice .....	419
DRILLS .....	420
EXERCISES .....	439
VOCABULARY .....	440
 LESSON 27.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	442
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	443
Grammar Notes .....	443
1. <u>hâj</u> (all uses) .....	443
2. <u>bôok</u> and Other Verbs with <u>hâj</u> as Causative ....	444
3. <u>een</u> as Subject Modifier .....	444
DRILLS .....	445
EXERCISES .....	469
VOCABULARY .....	470
 LESSON 28.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	472
Grammar Notes .....	473

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

1. Reduplicated Stative Verbs in Affirmative Requests .....	473
2. <u>òk</u> in Statements of Negation or Contradiction .....	473
3. <u>na</u> / <u>ná</u> as a Comment .....	474
4. Use of <u>sí</u> , ( <u>si</u> , <u>sí</u> ) in Request .....	474
5. <u>kô lěew kan</u> to Indicate Preference for a Particular Course of Action .....	474
DRILLS .....	475
EXERCISES .....	484
VOCABULARY .....	485
LESSON 29.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	487
Notes on the Basic Dialog and Other Notes .....	488
Grammar Notes .....	489
1. <u>sət</u> and <u>than</u> as <u>Completive</u> Verbs .....	489
2. <u>maj</u> as Voluntary Choice Question Word .....	489
3. <u>ryplaaaw</u> as 'Past time' Question Word .....	490
4. <u>thə</u> in Suggestions .....	490
5. <u>dǎaw</u> as a Sentence Connective .....	490
DRILLS .....	491
EXERCISES .....	515
VOCABULARY .....	516
LESSON 30.	
BASIC EPISODE (Part I) .....	518
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) .....	519
BASIC EPISODE: A VISIT TO THE SUNDAY MARKET .....	519
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) .....	520
Grammar Notes .....	521
1. <u>mýa</u> in Time Constructions .....	521
2. <u>sət</u> and <u>còp</u> Compared in Usage .....	522
DRILLS .....	523
VOCABULARY .....	529
LESSON 31.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	530
Grammar Notes .....	531
1. <u>hǎa</u> with <u>phóp</u> / <u>dâj</u> / <u>cəe</u> .....	531
2. <u>kwaa</u> after Stative Verbs .....	532
3. <u>khít</u> + <u>janṇaj</u> / <u>araj</u> .....	533
DRILLS .....	534
EXERCISES .....	550
VOCABULARY .....	551

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

LESSON 32.	
BASIC DIALOG (Part II) .....	553
Vocabulary Notes .....	554
Grammar Notes .....	556
<u>pa.j</u> and <u>maa</u> as Direction Words .....	556
DRILLS .....	557
EXERCISES .....	569
VOCABULARY .....	570
LESSON 33.	
BASIC DIALOG (Part III) .....	572
Grammar Notes .....	573
1. Use of <u>kô dâj</u> .....	573
2. <u>jàak</u> Versus <u>jaak dâj</u> .....	573
3. Two Types of Noun Compounds .....	574
VOCABULARY NOTES .....	575
DRILLS .....	576
EXERCISES .....	582
VOCABULARY .....	583
LESSON 34.	
BASIC DIALOG (Part IV) .....	586
Grammar Notes .....	587
1. <u>sĭa</u> , <u>òok</u> , <u>càaj</u> + <u>nən</u> .....	587
2. Sentence / NP + <u>khrop</u> .....	588
VOCABULARY NOTES .....	588
DRILLS .....	589
EXERCISES .....	598
VOCABULARY .....	598
LESSON 35.	
REVIEW DIALOG .....	601
Grammar Notes .....	603
Use of <u>khÿn</u> and <u>lon</u> with Stative Verbs .....	603
DRILLS .....	604
EXERCISES .....	621
VOCABULARY .....	622
LESSON 36.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	624
Vocabulary Notes .....	625
Grammar Notes .....	626
1. Types of Comparison .....	626
2. Equational Sentences .....	627
3. Sentences + <u>dii kwaa</u> .....	628

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

DRILLS .....	628
EXERCISES .....	643
VOCABULARY .....	645
LESSON 37.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	647
Vocabulary Notes .....	648
Grammar Notes .....	650
1. Verbs of Measurement with Metric Classifiers ..	650
2. An Optional Transformation .....	650
Chart I: <u>Dimensions</u> .....	651
DRILLS .....	652
EXERCISES .....	661
VOCABULARY .....	662
LESSON 38.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	666
Vocabulary Notes .....	667
Grammar Notes .....	670
1. Noun Classifiers .....	670
2. Nominalization ( <u>thîi</u> + VP) .....	673
DRILLS .....	673
EXERCISES .....	682
VOCABULARY .....	682
LESSON 39.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	687
Grammar Notes .....	688
1. Types of Noun Phrases:	
(a) Noun + Stative Verbs .....	688
(b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verbs .....	689
DRILLS .....	690
EXERCISES .....	712
VOCABULARY .....	713
LESSON 40.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	716
Vocabulary Notes .....	717
Grammar Notes .....	719
1. <u>châan</u> in Compounds .....	719
2. Completive Verbs .....	719
3. Pronoun Immediately After its Antecedent .....	720

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. Constructions with <u>jjym</u> .....	720
5. Constructions with <u>faak</u> .....	721
6. <u>tham dūaj</u> + Materials .....	721
DRILLS .....	722
EXERCISES .....	734
VOCABULARY .....	736



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

#### 21.0 BASIC DIALOG: Planning a Trip to the Floating Market

- A: wanthîi cèt meesăa níi  
pen wanjút  
khun wâaŋ máj  
April 7th is a holiday.  
Are you free?
- B: wanthîi cèt tron kawan  
araj khráp  
What day of the week  
is the 7th?
- A: wancan  
Monday.
- B: năn phôm wâaŋ khráp  
khun mií thúra araj rěkhráp  
Then I'm free.  
You have something in  
mind?
- A: jàak ca chuan paj thîaw  
talàat náam  
I'd like to invite you  
to go to the Floating  
Market.
- B: dii thiidiaw khráp  
phôm jàak paj maa naan léew,  
tèe mâj mií ookàat  
raw ca paj kan jaŋŋaj khráp  
Very good.  
I've been wanting to go  
for a long time, but  
haven't had the chance.  
How shall we go?
- A: ca nâŋ rót paj bâan phÿan  
phôm kòon, léew ca paj loŋ  
rya thîinân  
We'll go by car to the  
house of a friend of  
mine and then get in a  
boat there.
- B: bâan kháw jùu rim khloŋ  
rěkhráp  
His house is on the edge  
of the canal, eh?
- A: khráp  
kháw ca phaa raw paj duu  
talàat náam  
Right.  
He will take us to see  
the Floating Market.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- B: raw ca phóp kan thîinǎj                      Where'll we meet?
- A: phǎm ca paj ráp khun thîi bân              I'll pick you up at  
weelaa sǎon moon cháaw                      home at 8 a.m.
- B: phǎm khuan ca aw araj paj bân              What should I take with  
me?
- A: aw nǎen paj sýy khǎon kàp                      Take some money for  
klǎnthàajrúup kô phoo léew                      shopping and your camera.  
khráp    That'll be enough.

### 21.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC DIALOG

1. khun A kàp khun B ca paj thîaw thîinǎj kan
2. kháw ca paj kan mýaràj
3. khraj chuan khraj
4. khun B jàak paj thîaw talàat náam máj
5. kháw ca paj kan janǎaj
6. khraj ca phaa kháw paj duu talàat náam
7. khun B bòok háj khun A aw araj paj bân

### 21.2 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) wâan when used with people means 'free' in the sense of 'unoccupied, at leisure, not busy'.
- b) tron kàp (ka) means 'correspond to, agree with, coincide with' and it is used to indicate correspondence in time, such as the date with the day of the week, years of the Christian era with those of the Buddhist, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

c) cheen 'to invite' is used for formal invitations. It carries the meaning that the person issuing the invitation is acting as the host.

chuan 'to invite' is less formal. It indicates that the person making the request is urging someone to join him in some activity.

### 21.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The question  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} \text{jannaj}$  'How are you going?' can be answered in several ways.

	Type of Vehicle		Meaning
(1) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\}$	rótfaj	(No destination given)	'train'
(2) $\begin{array}{l} \text{nân} \\ \text{lon} \\ \text{khÿn} \\ \text{khàp} \\ \text{thìip} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{l} \text{rót túktúk} \\ \text{rya} \\ \text{khryânbin} \\ \text{rótjon} \\ \text{càkrajaan} \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Destination}$	'3 wheeled bus' 'boat' 'plane' 'car' 'bicycle'
(3) $\begin{array}{l} \text{bin} \\ \text{deen} \end{array}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Destination}$	'to fly' 'to walk'
(4) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Destination} + \underline{\text{dooj}}$	rótmee		'bus'

The construction with dooj (4) is used largely in written language or formal speech.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) The verb phaa 'to escort, to take' normally has sentence complements as indicated in the following:

(1) kháw    phaa...					
(2)	raw	paj...			
(3)	raw		duu	talàat	náam
kháw	phaa	raw	paj	duu	talàat náam

'He escorted            us        to (go see)    the Floating Market.'

phaa is used when referring to human beings. When objects are referred to aw 'to take,' is used. When the direction of the action is away from the speaker paj is used with phaa or aw; when it is toward the speaker, maa.

Observe the following construction with aw:

(1) kháw    aw    nɛən				
(2)		nɛən	maa...	
(3) kháw				sýy khǎɔŋ
kháw	aw	nɛən	maa	sýy khǎɔŋ

'He brought money        for buying things.'

On occasion Thai speakers may use aw... paj/maa instead of phaa... paj/maa when referring to human beings.

- c) When the Verb Phrase maa naan léɛw is added to a sentence, it indicates that the action referred to in the sentence has been in process for a long period of time and is still going on. (See 23.2.)

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

SENTENCE	+	<u>maa</u>	<u>naan</u>	<u>lěw</u>
phǒm    jàak    phóp    khun		<u>maa</u>	<u>naan</u>	<u>lěw</u>
( I        want    meet    you		come	long time	already)
'I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.'				

21.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan ankhāan	Tuesday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan sùk	Friday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship

b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. wanníi pen wancan	wanníi wan araj phrûnníi lâ mýawaanníi lâ	wan can wan ankhāan wan aathít
Today is Monday.	What day is it? Tomorrow? Yesterday?	Monday. Sunday. Sunday.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. m̄yawaanníi pen wansǎw	wanníi wan araj phrûnníi lâ m̄yawaanníi lâ lésw maryynníi lâ	wan aathít wan can wan sǎw wan an̄khaan
Yesterday was Saturday.	What day is today? Tomorrow? Yesterday? The day after tomorrow?	Sunday. Monday. Saturday. Tuesday.

3. phrûnníi pen wan pháyhàt	wanníi wan araj m̄yawaanníi lâ phrûnníi lâ lésw maryynníi lâ	wan phút wan an̄khaan wan phrýhàt wan sùk
Tomorrow is Thursday.	What is today? Yesterday? Tomorrow? And the day after tomorrow?	Wednesday. Tuesday. Thursday. Friday.

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw chuan phǒm paj th̄aw talàat nám  
He invited me to go to the Floating Market.
2. kháw chuan phǒm paj thamnaan kàp kháw  
He asked me to go work for him.
3. phǒm chuan kháw khuj ryân myan̄thaj  
I invited him to converse about Thailand.
4. phanrajaa khun chuan phanrajaa phǒm paj s̄ykhǒw phrûnníi  
Your wife asked my wife to go shopping tomorrow.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. phyân phǒm chuan phǒm paj sýy bâan klâj klâj ka kháw  
My friend tried to talk me into buying a house near him.
6. kháw chuan phǒm thaan lâw thfi bâan  
He invited me to have a drink at his house.
7. phǒm ca chuan phyânphyân paj thaan khâaw thfi bâan  
I'm going to invite some friends to eat at my house.

### d) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- phǒm jàak paj maa naan lésw  
I have been wanting to go for a long time.
1. phóp khun      phǒm jàak phóp khun maa naan lésw  
I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.
2. hěn kháw      phǒm jàak hěn kháw maa naan lésw  
I have been wanting to see her for a long time.
3. thǎam khun      phǒm jàak thǎam khun maa naan lésw  
I have been wanting to ask you (that) for a long time.
4. bòok kháw      phǒm jàak bòok kháw maa naan lésw  
I have been wanting to tell him (that) for a long time.
5. phûut rýanńíi káp khun      phǒm jàak ca phûut rýanńíi ka khun maa naan lésw  
I have been wanting to talk about this matter with you for a long time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. paj jaŋŋaj 'How are you going?'	paj rótmee By bus.
2. paj jaŋŋaj	paj rótjon By car.
3. paj jaŋŋaj	paj rótfaj By train.
4. paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót thésksîi By taxi.
5. paj jaŋŋaj	paj rya By boat.
6. paj jaŋŋaj	paj rya } bin khrÿan }
7. paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót sǎamlóo By samlor.

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. rót	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót
2. rót thésksîi	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót thésksîi
3. rótfaj	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rótfaj
4. khrÿanbin	paj jaŋŋaj	paj khrÿanbin
5. rya phÿan	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rya
6. rótmee	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rótmee
7. rót	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót phÿan
8. rót sǎamlóo	paj jaŋŋaj	paj sǎamlóo



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. paj jaṇṇaj 'How are you going?'	nāṇ rót paj By car.
2. paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rótmeē paj By bus.
3. paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rót thésksîi By taxi.
4. paj jaṇṇaj	khàp rót paj Drive (a car).
5. paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rya paj By boat.
6. paj jaṇṇaj	bin paj Fly.
7. paj jaṇṇaj	thìip càkkrajaan Ride a bicycle. paj

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nāṇ rót	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rót paj
2. nāṇ rótmeē	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rótmeē paj
3. nāṇ thésksîi	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ thésksîi paj
4. khàp rót	paj jaṇṇaj	khàp rót paj
5. nāṇ rya	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rya paj
6. bin	paj jaṇṇaj	bin paj
7. thìip càkkrajaan	paj jaṇṇaj	thìip càkkrajaan paj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. A: cháaw cháaw, khun paj thamnaan janraj  
How do you go to work mornings?  
B: phǒm khàp rót paj  
I drive.
2. A: phanrajaa khǒŋ khun paj thamnaan janraj  
How does your wife go to work?  
B: phǒm paj sòŋ kháw  
I take her.
3. A: lûuksǎaw khǒŋ khun paj roonrian janraj  
How does your daughter go to school?  
B: kháw paj rót phyân  
She goes in a friend's car.
4. A: phyân khun khonnán paj (ajútthajaa) janraj  
How does that friend of yours go to Ayuthaya?  
B: kháw nâŋ rya paj.  
By boat.
5. A: naaj khǒŋ khun ca paj ameerikaa janraj  
How is your boss going to America?  
B: kháw ca bin paj  
He'll fly.
6. A: thammadaa, khun maa roonrian janraj  
How do you usually come to school?  
B: phǒm deen maa.  
I walk.

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

7. A: phyân khǎnkhun maa roonrian janṅaj  
How does your friend come to school?

B: kháw maa rǒtmeē.  
By bus.

8. A: khun cǎon maa roonrian janṅaj  
How does John come to school?

B: kháw thǐip cǎkkrajaan maa  
He rides a bike.

j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun cǎon thǐip cǎkkrajaan maa roonrian	khun cǎon maa roonrian janṅaj How did John come to school?	kháw thǐip cǎkkrajaan maa He rode a bike.
2. phanrajaa khun cim maa sǎn sǎami kháw thúkwan	khun cim maa roonrian janṅaj How did Jim come to school?	phanrajaa kháw maa sǎn His wife brought him.
3. khun sǔnthǎon bin paj ameerikaa	khun sǔnthǎon paj janṅaj How did Mr. Sunthorn go?	kháw { bin paj paj khryānbin He flew.
4. khun thǎom nǎn rya paj júróop	khun thǎom paj janṅaj How did Tom go?	kháw { nǎn rya paj paj rya He went by boat.

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |    |  |  |        |                                       |
|----|--|--|--------|---------------------------------------|
| 5. | khun praphâat nân<br>rótmeē paj thamṇaan | khun praphâat paj<br>thamṇaan jaṇṇaj<br>How did Prapas<br>go to work?        | kháw { | nân rótmeē paj<br>paj rótmeē          |
|    |  |  |        | By bus.                               |
| 6. | chaawnaa dēen paj<br>naa                 | chaawnaa paj naa<br>jaṇṇaj<br>How did the farmer<br>to the field?            | kháw   | dēen paj                              |
|    |  |  |        | He walked.                            |
| 7. | phanrajaa kháw nân<br>sǎamlóo paj talàat | phanrajaa kháw<br>paj talàat jaṇṇaj<br>How did his wife<br>go to the market? | kháw { | paj sǎamlóo<br>nân rót sǎamlóo<br>paj |
|    |  |  |        | By samlor.                            |

k) Substitution Drill (Use Chart I with this Drill.)

Cue

Pattern

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
|                   | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rót</u><br>He's getting in (to) the car.         |
| 1. rótmeē         | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rótmeē</u><br>He's boarding the bus.             |
| 2. rótfaj         | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rótfaj</u> .<br>He's boarding the train.         |
| 3. khrÿanbin      | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>khrÿanbin</u><br>He's boarding the plane..       |
| 4. rót<br>sǎamlóo | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rót sǎamlóo</u><br>He's getting into the samlor. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

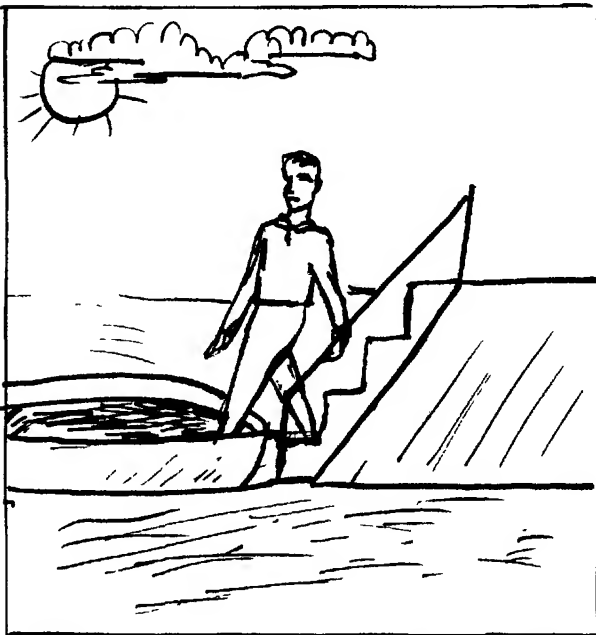
CHART I



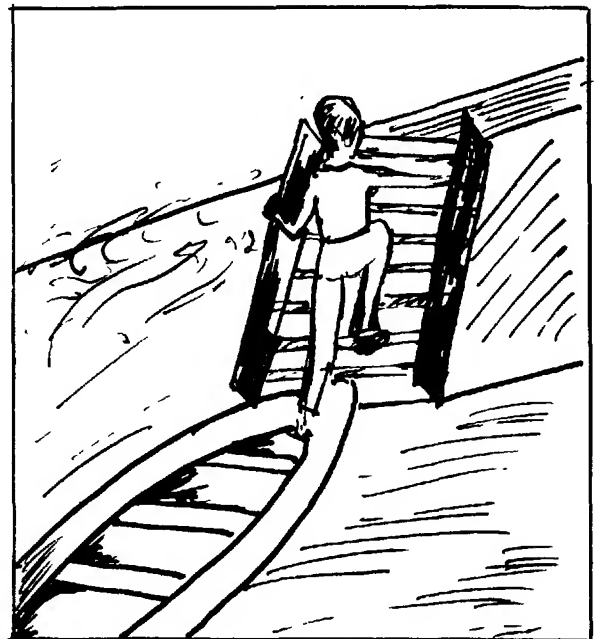
kháw kamləŋ khÿn rôt



kháw kamləŋ loŋ (càak) rôt



kháw kamləŋ loŋ rya



kháw kamləŋ khÿn càak rya

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw kamlan loŋ <u>rót</u> He's getting out of the car.
1. rótmee	kháw kamlan loŋ (càak) <u>rótmee</u> . He's getting out of the bus.
2. rótfaj	kháw kamlan loŋ (càak) <u>rótfaj</u> He's getting out of the train.
3. khryâŋbin	kháw kamlan loŋ (càak) <u>khryâŋbin</u> He's disembarking from the plane.

### m) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw phaa raw <u>paj duu talàat náam</u> He took us to see the Floating Market.
1. paj thîaw	kháw phaa raw <u>paj thîaw</u> talàat náam He took us on a trip to the Floating Market.
2. chianmàj	kháw phaa raw paj thîaw <u>chianmàj</u> He took us on a trip to Chiangmai.
3. paj thaan aahǎan thîi ráan	kháw phaa raw <u>paj thaan aahǎan thîi ráan</u> He took us to eat at that restaurant.
4. maa thaan aahǎan thîinîi	kháw phaa raw <u>maa thaan aahǎan thîinîi</u> He took us to eat here.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. sýy khǎoŋ                      kháw phaa raw maa sýy khǎoŋ thǎinǎi  
He took us shopping here.
6. maa loŋ rya                      kháw phaa raw maa loŋ rya thǎinǎi  
He took us into the boat.
7. maa sòn                          kháw phaa raw maa sòn thǎinǎi  
He took us here.

### n) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- kháw aw náŋsýy paj thǎinôn  
He took the books over there.
1. kâwǎi                              kháw aw kâwǎi paj thǎinôn  
He took the chairs over there.
2. hônnoŋ                              kháw aw kâwǎi paj hônnoŋ  
He took the chairs into the bedroom.
3. náŋsýy                              kháw aw náŋsýy paj hônnoŋ  
He took the books into the bedrooms.
4. bâan                                kháw aw náŋsýy paj bâan  
He took the books home.
5. klônthàajrûup                      kháw aw klônthàajrûup paj bâan  
He took the camera home.
6. thǎi ráan                              kháw aw klônthàajrûup paj thǎi ráan  
He took the camera to the shop.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw aw <u>nánsǔy</u> maa thîinîi He brought the books here.
1. kâwîi	kháw aw <u>kâwîi</u> maa thîinîi He brought the chairs here.
2. hônîi	kháw aw kâwîi maa <u>hônîi</u> He brought the chairs into this room.
3. aahǎan	kháw aw <u>aahǎan</u> maa hônîi He brought the food into this room.
4. klôn̄thàajrûup	kháw aw <u>klôn̄thàajrûup</u> maa hônîi He brought a camera into this room.

### p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw aw aahǎan maa thaan (thîinîi) He brought food to eat here.
1. n̄eən, s̄y khǒn̄	kháw aw <u>n̄eən</u> maa <u>s̄y khǒn̄</u> He brought money for shopping.
2. nánsǔy, àan	kháw aw <u>nánsǔy</u> maa <u>àan</u> He brought books to read.
3. rôt, kêe	kháw aw <u>rôt</u> maa <u>kêe</u> He brought cars to be repaired.





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) míssís brawn nân thésksíi paj pratuunáam . kháw khÿn rót thîi síjÊek râatprasǒŋ . kháw loŋ rót thîi nâa juusôom
1. míssís brawn paj nǎj
  2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
  3. kháw khÿn rót thîinǎj
  4. kháw loŋ rót thîinǎj
- c) místə samít paj bân khun phôo khun mÊe klâj klâj kàp bóssatân . kháw khÿn khrÿanbin thîi woochintân . kháw loŋ thîi bóssatân
1. místə samít paj nǎj
  2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
  3. kháw khÿn khrÿanbin thîinǎj
  4. kháw loŋ thîinǎj

### 21.6 EXERCISES

Using the format of the basic dialog as a guide plan an excursion to some point of interest. Keep the following points in mind:

1. Date and time of the trip,
2. The place,
3. The means of conveyance,
4. The persons included,
5. The arrangements for meeting beforehand,
6. What should be taken along, and
7. Any other relevant factors (weather conditions, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 21.7 VOCABULARY

ookàat (khrán)	chance
bin	to fly
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
dooj	by (means of transportation)
kêe	to repair, correct
khuj	to converse
klônṭhaajrûup (an)	camera
lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
míssís	Mrs.
místè	Mr.
naaj (khon)	boss
naan	to be long (in time)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phaa... { paj { maa	to take, or escort someone
phoo	to be enough, sufficient
rim (rim)	edge, rim
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rót sǎamlóo (khan)	samlor
rót túk túk	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rya           bin (lam, khrýan)	airplane
khrýan	
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thâa (thâa, hèn)	port, harbor
thàajrûup	to take a picture
thésksîi (khan)	taxi
thiidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thîip	to ride, pedal
thammadaa	usually, normally
tron { ka- kâp	to correspond to, agree with, coincide with
wan aṅkhaan	Tuesday
wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan sùk	Friday
wâaṅ	to be free, not busy, not occupied

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-TWO

#### 22.0 BASIC DIALOG: An American Contacts a Thai Friend

A Voice:	hânloo, thîinîi kâaw nỳn thoo pèet sũun há	Hello, this is 91280.
David:	khǎo phũut kakhun sũnthoon nòoj, dâj máj há	Could I speak with Mr. Sunthorn?
Voice:	roo dǎaw nahá	Just a minute.
Sunthorn:	sũnthoon phũut khráp	Sunthorn speaking.
David:	sawàtdii khráp phǎm, deewít, phũut khráp cam phǎm dâj máj	Hello, It's David speaking. Remember me?
Sunthoon:	ôo, khun deewít lǎe maa thỳn tântèe mỳaràj há	Oh, it's David! When did you get here?
David:	mỳa wansùk thîi léew	Last Friday.
Sunthorn:	khun òok càak ameerikaa mỳaràj há	When did you leave America?
David:	mỳa sǎon dyan kòon há raaw wanthîi kâaw kumphaa	Two months ago. Around February the ninth.
Sunthorn:	weelaanîi khun phák thîinǎj há	Where are you staying?
David:	thîi hooten imperian tronj sooj rûamrýdii	At the Imperial Hotel, On Ruam Rudee Lane.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Sunthorn:	jenníi wâaŋ máj há jàak ca chœen maa thaan khâaw thîi bâan	Are you free this evening? I'd like to invite you to eat at my house.
David:	jàa rópkuuan læj há	Don't put yourself out.
Sunthorn:	mâj rópkuuan røk há phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan phǒm dūaj	No trouble at all. I'd like you to know where my house is.
David:	khòpkhun mâak há bâan khun jùu thîinǎj lahá phǒm paj mâj thùuk	Thanks very much. Where is your house? I don't know how to get there.
Sunthorn:	phǒm ca paj ráp khun thîi hooten raaw sák hòk moon khrÿŋ, nahá	I'll pick you up at the hotel. Around 6:30, O.K.?
David:	tòk loŋ há phǒm ca khœoj jùu nâa hooten	Right. I'll wait for you in front of the hotel.

### 22.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) There are three ways to express the meaning of 'ago' in Thai:

$$(m\hat{y}a +) \text{ Period of Time } + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{k\grave{o}on} \\ \underline{th\hat{i}i} \underline{l\acute{e}ew} \\ \underline{maa} \underline{l\acute{e}ew} \end{array} \right.$$

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Example: (m̄ya) sǎam aathít kòon  
 (m̄ya) sǎam aathít thîi léew 'three weeks ago'  
 (m̄ya) sǎam aathít maa léew

b) tântèe 'since, from (such and such time) may be used with the time expressions above:

tântèe (m̄ya) sǒn dyan kòon 'since two months ago!

It may also be used with particular points in time, as in

tântèe (m̄ya) (dyan) phrýtsacikaa 'Since November'

c) khòosǒ (ค.ศ.) is an abbreviation for khrit sàkàràat (A.D. or Christian Era).

phòosǒ (พ.ศ.) is an abbreviation of phútthá sàkàràat (B.E. or Buddhist Era).

### 22.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The following constructions are used in asking and giving the date:

Q: wanní (pen) wan thîi	thâwràj
A: wanní (pen) wan thîi	pèet (meesǎa [jon])
'What day of the month is it? It's the eighth (of April)!'	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) The verb jàak 'want to, would like' normally has a sentence as a complement.

When the subject of the main verb (jàak) and of its complement are the same, the subject of the complement does not occur.

A:	phǒm	jàak	....	'I would like ...'
B:	phǒm		phóp khun	'I meet you.'
A/B:	phǒm	jàak	phóp khun	'I would like to meet you.'

When the subject of the main verb and of the complement are different and the meaning is causative (i.e. 'to have or cause someone to do something'), both subjects occur and hâj occurs after jàak.

A:	phǒm	jàak	...	'I would like ...'
B:			kháw phóp khun	'He meets you.'
A/B:	phǒm	jàak	<u>hâj</u> kháw phóp khun	'I would like him to meet you.'



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sîi	wannîi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date today?	wannîi wanthîi sîi It's the fourth.
2. hâa	phrûnîi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date tomorrow?	phrûnîi wanthîi hâa It's the fifth.
3. sǎam	mýawaannîi wanthîi thâwraj What was the date yesterday.	mýawaannîi wanthîi sǎam It was the third.
4. hòk	maryynnîi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynnîi wanthîi hòk It's the sixth.
5. sîp sîi	wannîi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date today?	wannîi wanthîi sîp sîi It's the fourteenth.
6. sîp hâa	phrûnîi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date tomorrow.	phrûnîi wanthîi sîp hâa It's the fifteenth.
7. sîp hòk	maryynnîi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynnîi wanthîi sîp hòk It's the sixteenth.
8. sîp sǒŋ	waansyyn(nîi) wanthîi thâwraj What was the day before yesterday?	waansyynnîi wanthîi sîp sǒŋ It was the twelfth.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. mók'karaakhom, rê'ek	dyan <u>mók'karaa khom</u> <sup>1</sup> pen dyan rê'ek khǒŋ pii January is the first month of the year.
2. kumphaaphan, sǒŋ	dyan <u>kumphaaphan</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sǒŋ</u> khǒŋ pii February is the second month of the year.
3. miinaakhom, sǎam	dyan <u>miinaakhom</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sǎam</u> khǒŋ pii March is the third month of the year.
4. meesǎajon, sîi	dyan <u>meesǎajon</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sîi</u> khǒŋ pii April is the fourth month of the year.
5. phrýtsaphaakhom, hâa	dyan <u>phrýtsaphaakhom</u> pen dyan thîi <u>hâa</u> khǒŋ pii May is the fifth month of the year.
6. míthunaaajon, hòk	dyan <u>míthunaaajon</u> pen dyan thîi <u>hòk</u> khǒŋ pii June is the sixth month of the year.

---

<sup>1</sup>Months having 31 days end in khom; those having 30 end with jon. Only February ends in phan. In spoken Thai these endings are usually omitted.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. karákkadaakhom, cèt      sǐnhǎakhom pen dyan thǐipèet khǒon pii  
August is the eighth month of the year.
8. kanjaajon, kâaw      kanjaajon pen dyan thǐi kâaw khǒon pii  
September is the ninth month of the year.
9. tulaakhom, sǐp      tulaakhom pen dyan thǐi sǐp khǒon pii  
October is the tenth month of the year.
10. phrýt(sa) cikaajon,      phrýtsacikaajon pen dyan thǐi sǐp-èt  
sǐp-èt      khǒon pii  
November is the eleventh month of the year.
11. thanwaakhom, sùt      thanwaakhom pen dyan sùt tháaj khǒon pii  
tháaj      December is the last month of the year.

### c) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. dyan araj pen dyan thǐisǒon khǒon pii	(dyan) kumphaa(phan)
2. dyan araj pen dyan rêsk khǒon pii	(dyan) mókkaraa(khom)
3. dyan araj pen dyan sùt tháaj khǒon pii	(dyan) thanwaa(khom)
4. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi pèet khǒon pii	(dyan) sǐnhǎa(khom)
5. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi hâa khǒon pii	(dyan) phrýtsaphaa(khom)
6. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi sǎam khǒon pii	(dyan) minaa(khom)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 7. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîp-èt<br>khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) phrýt(sa)<br>cikkaa(jon) |
| 8. dyan araj pen dyan thîi cèt khǎoŋ pii       | (dyan) karákkadaa(khom)         |
| 9. dyan araj pen dyan thîi hòk khǎoŋ pii       | (dyan) míthunaa(jon)            |
| 10. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîp khǎoŋ pii      | (dyan) tulaa(khom)              |
| 11. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîi khǎoŋ pii      | (dyan) meesǎa(jon)              |
| 12. dyan araj pen dyan thîi kâaw khǎoŋ pii     | (dyan) kanjaa(jon)              |

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (YEARS)

- |     |  |      |        |
|-----|--|------|--------|
| I.  | 1. <u>khooŋ</u> nỳn phan cèt rój cèt sîp hòk | 1776 | } A.D. |
|     | 2. khooŋ nỳn phan cèt rój pèet sîp kâaw      | 1789 |        |
|     | 3. khooŋ nỳn phan pèet rój hòk sîp sǎoŋ      | 1862 |        |
|     | 4. khooŋ nỳn phan pèet rój hòk sîp hâa       | 1865 |        |
|     | 5. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rój sîi sîp           | 1940 |        |
|     | 6. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rój sîi sîp pèet      | 1948 |        |
|     | 7. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rój hâa sîp sîi       | 1954 |        |
|     | 8. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rój hòk sîp hòk       | 1966 |        |
| II. | 1. <u>phooŋ</u> sǎoŋ phan sǎam rój sîp       | 2310 | } B.E. |
|     | 2. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan sǎam rój jîi sîp hâa      | 2325 |        |
|     | 3. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan sîi rój cèt sîp hâa       | 2475 |        |
|     | 4. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan sîi rój kâaw sîp sîi      | 2494 |        |
|     | 5. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan hâa rój                   | 2500 |        |
|     | 6. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan hâa rój nỳn               | 2501 |        |
|     | 7. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan hâa rój kâaw              | 2509 |        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

e) Response Drill (Use actual dates in the responses below)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. pii níi pen pii khoosǎo araj What year (A.D.) is this?	pii níi pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòksìp kâaw It's 1969.
2. pii nâa pen pii khoosǎo araj What year (A.D.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj cèt-sìp It's 1970.
3. pii thîilésw pen pii khoosǎo araj What year (A.D.) was last year?	pii thîi lésw pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòksìp pèet It was 1968.
4. pii níi pen pii phoosǎo araj What year (B.E.) is this?	pii níi pen pii phoosǎo sǎon phan hâa rǎoj sìp sǎon It's 2512. (A.D. 1969)
5. pii nâa pen pii phoosǎo araj What year (B.E.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii phoosǎo sǎon phan hâa rǎoj sìp sǎam It's 2513.
6. pii thîi lésw pen pii phoosǎo araj What year (B.E.) was last year?	pii thîilésw pen pii phoosǎo hâa rǎoj sìp-èt It was 2511.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
June 1, 1960	wanthîi nỳn mĩthunajon khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-sìp
July 14, 1966	wanthîi sìp sǐi karákadaakhom khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-sìp hòk
February 23, 1969	wanthîi jǐi-sìp sǎam kumphaaphan khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-sìp kâaw
May 20, B.E. 2509	wanthîi jǐi-sìp phrýtsaphaakhom phoosǎo sǎoj phan hâarǎoj kâaw
December 5, B.E. 2510	wanthîi hâa thanwaakhom phoosǎo sǎoj phan hâa rǎoj sìp

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. mỳa sǎam wan kǎon '3 days ago'  
mỳa sǎam wan thǐi lésw  
mỳa sǎam wan maa lésw
2. mỳa sìp wan kǎon '10 days ago'  
mỳa sìp wan thǐi lésw  
mỳa sìp wan maa lésw
3. mỳa sǎam aathít kǎon '3 weeks ago'  
mỳa sǎam aathít thǐi lésw  
mỳa sǎam aathít maa lésw

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. m̄ya h̄a dyan k̄on '5 months ago'  
 m̄ya h̄a dyan th̄i l̄ēw  
 m̄ya h̄a dyan maa l̄ēw
5. m̄ya h̄ok pii k̄on '6 years ago'  
 m̄ya h̄ok pii th̄i l̄ēw  
 m̄ya h̄ok pii maa l̄ēw

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. s̄on dyan	raw r̄ēm rian phaas̄athaj m̄yar̄aj When did we start studying Thai?	raw r̄ēm rian phaas̄athaj m̄ya s̄on dyan k̄on We started studying Thai two months ago.
2. h̄a pii	kh̄aw kh̄ēj j̄u myan̄thaj m̄yar̄aj When did he live in Thailand?	kh̄aw kh̄ēj j̄u myan̄thaj m̄ya h̄a pii k̄on He lived in Thailand five years ago.
3. s̄am dyan	kh̄aw kl̄ap paj myan̄ thaj m̄yar̄aj When did he return to Thailand?	kh̄aw kl̄ap paj myan̄ thaj m̄ya s̄am dyan k̄on He returned to Thailand three months ago.
4. s̄am s̄i wan	khun ph̄op kh̄aw m̄yar̄aj When did you meet him?	ph̄om ph̄op kh̄aw m̄ya s̄am s̄i wan k̄on I met him three or four days ago.

NOTE: Repeat the drill using ...th̄i l̄ēw and once more using ...maa l̄ēw in place of k̄on

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hōṅsamùt	m̄ya sǒṅ chūamoon kòṅ khun jùu thīinǎj Where were you two hours ago?	m̄ya sǒṅ chūamoon kòṅ, phǒm jùu naj hōṅsamùt Two hours ago I was at the library.
2. duu náṅsǎy	m̄ya jīi-síp naathii maa léew, khun tham araj What were you doing ten minutes ago?	m̄ya jīi-síp naathii maa léew, phǒm duu náṅsǎy Ten minutes ago I was studying.
3. sǒṅkhlǎa	m̄ya sǎam aathít thīi léew khun paj nǎj Where did you go three weeks ago?	m̄ya sǎam aathít thīi léew phǒm paj sǒṅkhlǎa Three weeks ago I went to Songkla.
4. tham râatchakaan	m̄ya cèt pii kòṅ, kháw thamṅaan araj khráp Seven years ago what was he doing?	m̄ya cèt pii kòṅ, kháw tham râatchakaan Seven years ago he was in government service.
5. rian náṅsǎy thīi krunthêep	m̄ya hòk pii kòṅ, khun rian náṅsǎy thīi nǎj Where were you studying (going to school) six years ago.	m̄ya hòk pii kòṅ, phǒm rian náṅsǎy thīi krunthêep I was going to school in Bangkok six years ago.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>6. jùu thîi myaŋ m̄ya p̄est pii thîi lésw,<br/>bóosatân</p> | <p>khun jùu thîi nǎj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Where were you<br/>living eight<br/>years ago?</p> | <p>m̄ya p̄est pii thîi lésw<br/>phom jùu thîi myaŋ<br/>bóosatân</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Eight years ago<br/>I was living in<br/>Boston.</p> |
|--|--|--|

### j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. m̄ya dyan phr̄ýtsacikaa</p>	<p>khun maa th̄yŋ n̄i t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been here?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) dyan phr̄ýtsacikaa</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since November.</p>
<p>2. m̄ya s̄oŋ dyan kòon</p>	<p>khun maa th̄yŋ n̄i t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been here?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) s̄oŋ dyan kòon</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since two months ago.</p>
<p>3. m̄ya s̄am pii maa lésw</p>	<p>khun maa jùu myaŋ thaj t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been living in Thailand?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) s̄am pii maa lésw</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since three years ago.</p>
<p>4. m̄ya pii phoos̄o s̄oŋ phan h̄a r̄ooj</p>	<p>khun maa jùu myaŋ thaj t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been living in Thailand?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) pii phoos̄o s̄oŋ phan h̄a r̄ooj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since B.E. 2500.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                       |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| 5. m̄ya dyan thanwaa<br>pii th̄il̄ésw | khun maa j̄u th̄in̄fi<br>t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj<br>How long have you<br>been living here? | t̄ant̄è m̄ya dyan thanwaa<br>pii th̄il̄ésw<br>Since last December. |
| 6. m̄ya s̄on<br>ch̄uamoon̄ k̄on       | kháw paj t̄ant̄è<br>m̄yaràj<br>How long has he<br>been gone?                       | t̄ant̄è m̄ya s̄on<br>ch̄uamoon̄ k̄on<br>Since two hours ago.       |
| 7. m̄ya s̄on aathít<br>th̄i lésw      | kháw paj t̄ant̄è<br>m̄yaràj<br>How long has he<br>been gone?                       | t̄ant̄è m̄ya s̄on<br>aathít th̄i lésw<br>Since two weeks ago.      |

### k) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
|              | jàak ca ch̄en maa thaán kh̄aw <u>th̄i b̄an</u>  |
| 1. th̄in̄fi  | jàak ca ch̄en maa thaán kh̄aw <u>th̄in̄fi</u><br>I'd like to invite you to eat here.      |
| 2. th̄iaw    | jàak ca ch̄en maa <u>th̄iaw</u> th̄in̄fi<br>I'd like to invite you to go out here.        |
| 3. s̄on      | jàak ca ch̄en maa <u>s̄on</u> th̄in̄fi<br>I'd like to invite you to come teach here.      |
| 4. w̄aj nám  | jàak ca ch̄en maa <u>w̄aj nám</u> th̄in̄fi<br>I'd like to invite you to go swimming here. |
| 5. phóp kháw | jàak ca ch̄en maa <u>phóp kháw</u> th̄in̄fi<br>I'd like to invite you to meet him here.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
|              | jàak ca chøen paj than khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>bân</u>   |
| 1. thîi ráan | jàak ca chøen paj thaan khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>ráan</u> |
| 2. thîi nân  | jàak ca chøen paj thaan khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>nân</u>  |
| 3. sǒn       | jàak ca chøen paj <u>sǒn</u> thîinân                  |
| 4. phóp kháw | jàak ca chøen paj <u>phóp</u> <u>kháw</u> thîinân     |

### m) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
|                           | <u>phǒm</u> jàak phóp khun                                   |
| 1. kháw jàak              | <u>kháw</u> jàak phóp khun                                   |
| 2. rúucàk khun            | kháw jàak <u>rúucàk</u> <u>khun</u>                          |
| 3. paj myanṭhaj           | kháw jàak <u>paj</u> <u>myanṭhaj</u>                         |
| 4. pen mǒɔ                | kháw jàak <u>pen</u> <u>mǒɔ</u>                              |
| 5. sýy rót                | kháw jàak <u>sýy</u> <u>rót</u>                              |
| 6. khàp rót pen           | kháw jàak <u>khàp</u> <u>rót</u> <u>pen</u>                  |
| 7. phǒm                   | <u>phǒm</u> jàak kháp rót pen                                |
| 8. phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj | phǒm jàak <u>phûut</u> <u>phaasǎa</u> <u>thaj</u> <u>dâj</u> |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### n) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. phǒm jàak...  
khun rúucàk bâan phǒm
2. phǒm jàak...  
khun phûut phaasǎathaj kan
3. khun phôo phǒm jàak...  
phǒm pen mǎo
4. phǒm jàak...  
khun àan nánsǎy lêm níi
5. phômêe thúk khon jàak...  
lûuklûuk rian roonrian diidii

#### Pattern 3

- phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan  
phǒm  
I'd like for you to know  
where my house is.
- phǒm jàak hâj khun  
phûut phaasǎa thaj kan  
I'd like to have you  
speak Thai together.
- khun phôo phǒm jàak hâj phǒm  
pen mǎo  
My father would have liked  
for me to become a doctor.
- phǒm jàak hâj khun àan  
nánsǎy lêm níi  
I'd like to have you  
read this book.
- phômêe thúk khon jàak  
hâj lûuklûuk rian roonrian dii dii  
All parents would like to  
have their children go to  
good schools.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. phǒm jàak...  
phǒm rúucàk kháw
2. phǒm mâj jàak  
kháw maa háa phǒm thîinîi
3. phǒm jàak...  
phanrajaa phǒm khàp rôt pen
4. phǒm mâj jàak...  
phǒm jùu krunthêep
5. khun phôo khun mēe phǒm jàak...  
phǒm tham ráatchakaan

#### Pattern 3

1. phǒm jàak rúucàk kháw  
I'd like to meet him.
2. phǒm mâj jàak háj kháw  
maa háa phǒm thîinîi  
I wouldn't like to have  
him come to see me here.
3. phǒm jàak háj phanrajaa  
phǒm khàp rôt pen  
I'd like to have my wife  
able to drive a car.
4. phǒm mâj jàak jùu krunthêep  
I wouldn't like to live  
in Bangkok.
5. khun phôo khun mēe phǒm jàak  
háj phǒm tham ráatchakaan  
My parents would like me to  
be a government employee.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### p) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mǎo	khun phǎo khun jàak hâj khun pen khruu máj Would your father like for you to be a teacher?	mâj jàak khráp, khun phǎo phǎm jàak hâj phǎm pen mǎo No, he wouldn't. My father would like for me to be a doctor.
2. tàançanwàt	khun jàak jùu krunthêep máj Would you like to live in Bangkok?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak jùu tàançanwàt No, I wouldn't. I'd like to live in the provinces.
3. eesia	khun jàak paj áafarikaa máj Would you like to go to Africa?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak paj eesia No, I wouldn't. I'd like to go to Asia.
4. aahǎan thaj	khun jàak thaan aahǎan faràṅ máj Would you like to eat foreign food?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak thaan aahǎan thaj No, I wouldn't. I'd like to eat Thai food.
5. thoom	khun jàak hâj kháw rĭak khun wâa mísatə braawn máj Would you like to have him call you Mr. Brown?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak hâj kháw rĭak phǎm wâa thoom No, I wouldn't.. I'd like to have him call me Tom.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

6. jùu kabâan khun jàak hâj phanrajaa      mâj jàak kháp, phǒm  
           khun thamnaan nǒok bâan máj      jàak hâj kháw jùu kabâan
- Would you like to                                      No, I wouldn't. I  
                           have your wife work                                would like to have  
                           (outside)?    her stay at home.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Suppose today is Thursday. Focus your attention on 'wanní (today)' and notice what the days in the past weeks and the future weeks are called. Repeat the words in the left column after the instructor.

aathít thiŋléw  Last week	can	Monday of last week
	aŋkhaan	Tuesday of last week
	phút	Wednesday of last week
	phrýhàt	Thursday of last week
	sùk	Friday of last week
	sǎw	Saturday of last week
	aathít	Sunday of last week
aathít nií  This week	can	mýa wan can níí                      Last Monday
	aŋkhaan	mýa wan aŋkhaan níí                  Last Tuesday
	phút	mýa waanníí                              Yesterday
	phrýhàt	wanníí                                      Today
	sùk	phrûŋ níí                                  Tomorrow
	sǎw	maryynníí (or)                          This coming Sunday
	aathít	wan sǎw      { níí                      This Saturday { thŋi ca thŋŋ níí wan aathít { níí                      This Sunday { thŋi ca thŋŋ níí

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

	can	wan can {nâa	Next Monday
		}thiî ca thŷn ní	This coming Monday
aathít	aŋkhaan	wan aŋkhaan nâa	Next Tuesday
nâa	phút	wan phút nâa	Next Wednesday
Next week	phrŷhàt	wan phrŷhàt nâa	Next Thursday
	sùk	wan sùk nâa	Friday of Next week
	săw	wan săw nâa	Saturday of next week
	aathít	wan aathít nâa	Sunday of next week

### 22.4 EXERCISES

- a) Assume that you have just arrived in Thailand. Call up your friend, Mr. Prasert. He invites you to dinner at his house so that you can meet his wife.

(Use the approximate date of your arrival in Thailand as a basis for responses.)

- b) The instructor points at various dates on the calendar asks the students what the date is. (This should be continued until all students can give any date in the year readily).
- c) Student A asks Student B his birthdate. Student B responds with the correct information.
- d) Student A asks Student B how long he has been doing various things (below are some examples). Student A responds with the correct information.
1. living in the Washington area (or some other area)
  2. studying Thai
  3. married
  4. sitting here, etc.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) The students question each other about things they have wanted to do in the past and whether or not other people wanted them to do these things. Below is a sample exchange:

A: m̄ya s̄ip pii maa lésw phǒm jàak pen m̄ɔ

B: khun ph̄ɔ jàak h̄aj khun pen m̄ɔ r̄yplàaw

A: m̄aj jàak khráp . kháw jàak h̄aj phǒm pen khruu

A: Ten years ago I wanted to be a doctor.

B: Did your father want you to be a doctor?

A: No, he didn't. He wanted me to be a teacher.

### 22.5 VOCABULARY

áafarikaa (thaw̄fip)	Africa (continent)
aathít	week
imphiir̄ian	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
cam... d̄aj	to remember
ch̄uammon	hour (60 minutes)
deewít	David
dyan	month
hanl̄ɔ	Hello
jàak	to want to, would like to
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
kanjaa (jon)	September
karákkadaa(khom)	July
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
khr̄ítsàkàràat (kh̄ɔ s̄ɔ)	Christian Era
kumphaa(phan)	February
l̄əəj	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

maa léew	ago
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
meesǎa(jon)	April
miinaa(khom)	March
míthunaa(jon)	June
mókkaraa(khom)	January
phák	to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
-phan	ending for month of February
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phútthá sàkàràat (phoosǎo)	Buddhist Era
rêem	to start
rópkuam	to bother, trouble (someone)
rə, rək, rək, rək,	particle often used with statement
rək, rə-	of negation
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
sǐnhǎa(khom)	August
sǔnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
sùttháaj	last
thíi léew	ago
tântèe	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
thanwaa(khom)	December
thíi léew	last
thùuk	to be right, correct
tòklon	right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tulaa(khom)	October
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wanthíi	date

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-THREE

#### 23.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation About Length of Residence

- A: khun jùu myaη thaj maa dâj kii pii léεw  
How long have you been living in Thailand?
- B: sǒoη pii kwàa léεw khráp  
More than two years.
- A: léεw phyân khun la khráp maa jùu naan léεw rǎe  
And your friend? Has he been here long?
- B: kháw phêη maa khráp  
He just came.
- A: kháw ca jùu kii pii khráp  
How many years will he be (here)?
- B: jàaη nóoη sǒoη pii, jàaη mâak sii pii  
At least two years. At most four years.
- A: thammaj kháw thýη phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj cháτ jaηηan lakhráp  
How is it that he speaks Thai so clearly?
- B: phró kháw khǎeη rian maa kòon khráp  
He studied it previously.
- A: thîinǎj khráp  
Where?
- B: thîi ameerikaa  
In America.
- A: kháw rian jùu naan thâwràj khráp  
How long did he study?
- B: sǐp dyan khráp  
Ten months.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 23.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) After constructions giving numerical amounts kwàa is translated as 'more than'. For example,

sǒŋ pii kwàa 'More than 2 years'  
sìp lít kwàa 'More than 10 liters'

When used with bàat 'baht' (Thai currency), the position of kwàa is important, thus

sìp bàat kwàa means 'more than ten baht but less than eleven',  
but sìp kwàa bàat means 'more than ten but less than twenty'.

- b) phên 'just' occurs just before the main verb in the sentence and refers to the recent past.

kháw phên maa 'He just came.'

- c) phûut thoorasàp means 'to talk on the telephone.'

### 23.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The verbs jùu, and maa may be used in conjunction with dâj and lɛw to indicate whether (1) an activity is complete or incomplete, and (2) whether it lasted for a long or short period of time. When verbs are used in this manner, they may be called Aspect Particles.

1. When jùu is used as an aspect particle, it indicates that the activity referred to continued for a particular period of time. jùu does not itself indicate the time of an action but may be used in combination with time expressions as in the following example.

kháw ca rian nán̄sǎy jùu sǒŋ pii  
'He'll be studying for 2 years (no more or less)'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

2. When maa... l'ésw occur together as aspect markers there is indication that the action originated in the past and is continuing into the present.

kháw thamnaan maa 2 pii l'ésw

'He has been working for 2 years (and still is)!'.

3. dâj + Time Expression refers only to the passage of a specific period of time; when it is followed by l'ésw, there is indication that the period of time referred to continues into the present; when used without time or aspect particles, it is interpreted as 'indefinite past time'.

kháw thamnaan dâj 2 pii

'He worked for 2 years.'

kháw thamnaan dâj 2 pii l'ésw

'He's been working for 2 years (and still is working)!'.

In the chart below the use and meaning of jùu, dâj, maa, and l'ésw are illustrated:

MAIN SENTENCE	Aspect Particles and Time Expressions				Meaning
kháw thamnaan	jùu		2 pii		Past Time; Specific Period of Time <sup>1</sup>
kháw thamnaan	jùu	dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamnaan		dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamnaan	jùu	...	.....		Present Progressive <sup>2</sup>
kháw <u>kamlaŋ</u> thamnaan	jùu	...	.....		
kháw thamnaan	{ jùu maa		2 pii	l'ésw	Present Perfect <sup>3</sup>
kháw thamnaan	{ jùu maa	dâj	2 pii	l'ésw <sup>4</sup>	
kháw thamnaan		dâj	2 pii	l'ésw	
kháw <u>ca</u> thamnaan	...	...	2 pii		Future <sup>5</sup>
kháw <u>ca</u> thamnaan	jùu	...	2 pii		Future, Specific period of time

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

1. He worked (for) two years.
2. He is working.
3. He has been working...
4. He has been working... (focus on starting point)
5. He will be working two years.

Special note: If either maa or jùu occurs in the main sentence, it can not occur as a particle,

thus kháw maa jùu myaŋ thaj dâj 2 pii lésw

(Two years have passed since he came to live in Thailand).

'He's been living in Thailand for 2 years.'

Neither maa dâj 2 pii lésw nor jùu dâj 2 pii lésw can occur after kháw maa jùu myaŋ thaj.

- b) thammaj 'why' may occur at the beginning of the sentence or at the end. Its position is determined by the expected answer, thus

1. thammaj is at the end of the sentence if the response is a Verb Phrase indicating purpose, thus

Q: paj thammaj 'Why are you going?'  
(What is the purpose?)

A: paj sýy khǎŋ 'To shop.'

2. thammaj is at the beginning of the sentence if the response expected normally begins with phró 'because', and provides an explanation as to why certain actions took place or why certain situations exist, thus

Q: thammaj paj sýy thîinân 'Why did you buy there?'  
thammaj mâj sýy thîinîi 'Why not shop here?'

A: phró thîinân (khǎŋ) 'Because things are  
thùuk kwàa cheaper there.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. thammaj always occurs at the beginning of negative questions.
4. thýn may occur with thammaj. It serves as an intensifier of the question. Observe the following example:

thammaj khun mâj jàak jùu wòochintân

'Why don't you like living in Washington?'

thammaj khun thýn mâj jàak jùu wòochintân

'How is that you don't like living in Washington?'

### 22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun jùu myan thaj maa (dâj) { kîi pii                      lésu { naan thâwràj  How long have you been living in Thailand?	phôm jùu myan thaj maa (dâj) sǒon pii lésu  Two years.
2. khun thamnaan thîinfi maa (dâj) { kîi pii                      lésu { naan thâwràj  How long have you been working here?	phôm thamnaan thîinfi maa (dâj) lǎaj pii lésu  Several years.
3. khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) kîi dyan lésu  How many months have you been studying Thai?	phôm rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) hâa dyan lésu  Five months.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. khun pen khruu maa (dâj)<br/>kîi pii lésw<br/>How many years have<br/>you been a teacher?</p>    | <p>phǒm pen khruu maa (dâj)<br/>(nỳn) pii kwàa lésw<br/>More than a year.</p> |
| <p>5. khun rúucàk kháw maa<br/>(dâj) naan thâwràj lésw<br/>How long have you<br/>been knowing him?</p> | <p>phǒm rúucàk kháw maa<br/>(dâj) sǎam pii lésw<br/>Three years.</p>          |
| <p>6. khun tènṇaan maa (dâj)<br/>kîi pii lésw<br/>How many years have<br/>you been married?</p>        | <p>phǒm tènṇaan maa (dâj)<br/>kỳap pii lésw<br/>Almost a year.</p>            |

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. khun maa jùu thîinfi dâj<br/>naan thâwràj lésw khráp<br/>How long ago was it that you<br/>came to live here?</p>       | <p>phǒm maa jùu thîinfi dâj<br/>hòk dyan lésw khráp<br/>Six months (ago).</p>   |
| <p>2. khun maa thamṇaan thîinfi<br/>dâj naan thâwràj lésw khráp<br/>How long ago was it that<br/>you came to work here?</p>  | <p>phǒm maa thamṇaan thîinfi<br/>dâj nỳn pii lésw khráp<br/>One year (ago).</p> |
| <p>3. khun maa rian nánsýy thîinfi<br/>dâj kîi dyan lésw<br/>How many months ago was it<br/>that you came to study here?</p> | <p>phǒm maa rian nánsýy thîinfi<br/>dâj sǒṇ dyan lésw<br/>Two months (ago).</p> |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. khun maa pen khruu thfinfi                      phǒm maa pen khruu thfinfi  
dâj kii pii léew                                      dâj kÿap nÿn pii léew khráp
- How many years ago was it  
that you came to be a  
teacher here?                                      Almost a year (ago).

c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. lǎaj pii	khun tham râatchakaan maa dâj naan thâwràj léew How long have you been a government employee?	phǒm tham râatchakaan maa dâj lǎaj pii léew Several years.
2. sǎam dyan	khun maa rian phaasǎa thaj thfi ef-és-aj dâj kii dyan léew How many months have you been studying Thai at FSI?	phǒm maa rian phaasǎa thaj thfi éf-és-aj dâj sǎam dyan léew Three months.
3. aathít kwàa	khun rian phaasǎa thâj maa dâj kii aathít lèew How many weeks have you been studying Thai?	phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj maa dâj aathít kwàa léew More than a week.
4. sǒn pii	khun rúucàk kháv maa dâj naan thâwràj léew How long have you been knowing him?	phǒm rúucàk kháv maa dâj sǒn pii kwàa léew More than two years.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |                    |   |   |
|----|--------------------|---|---|
| 5. | hâa dyan           | khun klàp maa ameerikaa<br>dâj ðii dyan lésw<br><br>How many months has<br>it been since you<br>came back to America? | phǒm klàp maa ameerikaa<br>dâj hâa dyan lésw<br><br>Five months.      |
| 6. | sǎam<br>chûamooᅇ   | khun nân khoᅇj kháw maa<br>dâj kii chûamooᅇ lésw<br><br>How many hours have<br>you been sitting<br>waiting for him?   | phǒm nân khoᅇj kháw maa<br>dâj sǎam chûamooᅇ lésw<br><br>Three hours. |
| 7. | khrÿᅇᅇ<br>chûamooᅇ | raw khuj kan maa dâj kii<br>naathii lésw<br><br>How many minutes have<br>you been conversing?                         | raw khuj kan maa dâj<br>khrÿᅇᅇ chûamooᅇ lésw<br><br>A half hour.      |

### d) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. khun rúucàk kháw maa naan  
lésw  
You've been knowing him  
for a long time.
2. khun thamᅇaan thîinîi maa  
naan lésw  
You've been working here  
for a long time.

#### Pattern 2

- khun rúucàk kháw maa naan  
lésw rǎkhráp  
Have you been knowing  
him for long?
- khun thamᅇaan thîinîi maa  
naan lésw rǎkhráp  
Have you been working  
here long?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa<br>naan léew<br>You've been studying<br>Thai for a long time.           | khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa<br>naan léew rǎkhráp<br>Have you been studying<br>Thai for long?           |
| 4. khun jùu thîinîi maa naan<br>léew<br>You've been living here<br>for a long time.                   | khun jùu thîinîi maa naan<br>léew rǎkhráp<br>Have you been living<br>here long?                       |
| 5. khun sâap ryânnîi maa naan<br>léew<br>You've been knowing<br>about this matter<br>for a long time. | khun sâap ryânnîi maa naan<br>léew rǎkhráp<br>Have you been knowing<br>about this matter for<br>long? |
| 6. khun jàak hěn kháw maa naan<br>léew<br>You've been wanting to<br>see him for a long time.          | khun jàak hěn kháw maa naan<br>léew rǎkhráp<br>Have you been wanting<br>to see him for long?          |
| 7. khun chôp kháw maa naan<br>léew<br>You've liked her for a<br>long time.                            | khun chôp kháw maa naan<br>léew rǎkhráp<br>Have you liked her long?                                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.	khun maa jùu myanṭhaj dâj naan léew rěkháp Have you been living in Thailand long?	phêṅ maa kháp I just came.
2.	khun maa khoṅj phǒm dâj naan léew rěkháp Have you been waiting for me long?	phêṅ maa kháp I just came.
3.	khun maa rian phaasăa thaj dâj naan léew rěkháp Have you been studying Thai for long?	phêṅ maa kháp I just started.
4.	khun rúucàk kháw maa naan léew rěkháp Have you been knowing him for long?	phêṅ rúucàk kháp I just met him.
5.	khun rian nánṣŷy lêmníi maa naan léew rěkháp Have you been reading this book long?	phêṅ rian kháp I just began.

### f) Expansion Drill

thammaj

thammaj lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ chát lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ phûut dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ phûut phaasăa thaj dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

thammaj kháw thýṅ phûut phaasăa thaj dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- kháw phêṅ maa myaṅ thaj . thammaj kháw thýṅ phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp  
He just came to Thailand. How is that he can speak Thai so clearly?
- kháw mâj chōp aakaat rōon . thammaj kháw thýṅ jàak paj jùu myaṅ thaj lakhráp  
He doesn't like hot weather. How is that he wants to go to Thailand?
- kháw mâj khəej maa rian thîi ameerikaa . thammaj kháw thýṅ phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít dâj dii lakhráp  
He has never studied in America. How is that he speaks English (so) well?
- kháw bòok wâa kháw mâj mi nēen . thammaj kháw thýṅ sýy rót lakhráp  
He said he didn't have any money. How is it that he speaks buying a car?

### h) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- thammaj (khun) (thýṅ) mâj paj thamṅaan  
Why is it that you aren't going to work?
- phûut thammaj khun thýṅ mâj phûut  
Why is it that you don't talk?
  - chōp kháw thammaj khun thýṅ mâj chōp kháw  
Why is that you don't like him?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. māj jāak jùu thammaj khun thýn māj jāak jùu wəochintān  
wəochintān Why is it that you don't like to live  
in Washington?
4. māj maa rian thammaj khun thýn māj maa rian nānsýy  
nānsýy How is it that you aren't studying?
5. māj khāwcaj thammaj khun thýn māj khāwcaj  
How does it happen that you don't understand?
6. māj khàp rót thammaj khun thýn māj khàp rót maa roonrian  
maa roonrian Why is it that you don't drive to school?

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. rian maa kòon	thammaj kháw thýn phūut thaj dāj chát How does it come about that he speaks Thai so well?	(phró) kháw khəəj rian maa kòon Because he studied previously.
2. māj chōp aakàat nǎaw	thammaj khun thýn māj jāak paj nōorawee How is that you don't want to go to Norway?	(phró) phǒm māj chōp aakàat nǎaw Because I don't like cold weather.
3. māj sabaaj	thammaj mýawaanníi kháw thýn māj maa thamnaan Why was it that he didn't come to work yesterday?	(phró) kháw māj sabaaj Because he was ill.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |  |   |   |
|----|--|---|---|
| 4. | khàp rót<br>mâj pen  | thammaj phanrajaa khun<br>thýn mâj khàp rót<br>Why isn't your wife<br>driving?                    | (phró) kháw khàp rót<br>mâj pen<br>Because she doesn't<br>know how.   |
| 5. | thaaŋ<br>ráatchakaan<br>jàak hâj phóm<br>rúu phaasǎa<br>thaj | thammaj khun thýn tōŋ<br>maa rian phaasǎa thaj<br>Why did you have to<br>come to study Thai?      | (phró) thaaŋ ráatcha-<br>kaan jàak hâj phóm<br>rúu phaasǎa thaj<br>Because the Govern-<br>ment wanted me to<br>know Thai. |
| 6. | mâj wâaŋ   | thammaj khun thýn mâj<br>aw rót paj kêε<br>Why didn't you take<br>your car to get it<br>repaired? | (phró) phóm mâj wâaŋ<br>Because I wasn't<br>free.   |

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>   |
|---|---|
| 1. kháw rian phaasǎa thaj jùu kǐi<br>pii<br>How many years did he study<br>Thai?    | kháw rian jùu nỳn pii<br>He studied one year.                                       |
| 2. khun pen thahǎan jùu kǐi pii<br>How many years were you<br>a soldier?            | phóm pen thahǎan jùu sǎoŋ pii<br>I was a soldier for two<br>years.                  |
| 3. khun faŋ théep jùu kǐi chûamoon<br>How many hours did you listen<br>to the tape? | phóm faŋ théep jùu khrỳn<br>chûamoon<br>I listened to the tape<br>for half an hour. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>4. khun phûut thoorasàp jùu<br/>naan thâwràj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How long did he talk on<br/>the telephone?</p>    | <p>kháw phûut thoorasàp jùu<br/>jîisíp hâa naathii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He talked 25 minutes<br/>on the phone.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw thamṇaan jùu thîi<br/>wianṇan kii pii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many years did he<br/>work in Vientiane?</p> | <p>kháw thamṇaan jùu thîinân<br/>sǒṇ pii khryṇ</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He worked there two<br/>and a half years.</p>  |

### 23.4 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES (Listen to the passages and answer the questions.)

- a) m̂ya pii 1941 - tĥyṇ 1943 khun thoóm pen thahǎan jùu thîi ookinaawaa . kháw pen jùu sǒṇ pii, d̂lawníi khun thoóm pen khâarâatchakaan krasuanṇ t̂aan prathêet

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun thoóm khœej pen thahǎan máj	khœej
2. thîi nǎj	thîi ookinaawaa
3. pen jùu kii pii	sǒṇ pii
4. t̂ant̂èe pii khoosǒ araj tĥyṇ khoosǒ araj	1941 - 1943
5. d̂lawníi kháw thamṇaan araj	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan krasuanṇ t̂aanprathêet



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) myâcháawníi khun prichaa paj talàat . kháw phóp phýan  
thíi talàat . kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu sǎw chûamoon

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. myâcháawníi khun prichaa phóp khraj	kháw phóp phýan
2. thínǎj	thíi talàat
3. kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu naan thâwràj	kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu sǎw chûamoon

- c) místə samít thamnaan thíi krasuanṭaan prathêet maa  
dâj lǎaj pii lésw . kháw khəej paj jùu lǎaj prathêet .  
kháw khəej paj pen kɔnsǔn thíi chianmàj jùu sǎam  
pii . weelaaníi , kháw jùu thíi wochinṭân

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. místə samít thamnaan thíi krasuan ṭaanprathêet maa dâj kii pii lésw	lǎaj pii lésw
2. kháw khəej paj jùu ṭaan prathêet máj	khəej kháw khəej paj jùu lǎaj prathêet
3. kháw khəej paj jùu myanṭhaj máj	khəej , kháw khəej paj pen kɔnsún thíi chianmàj
4. kháw pen kɔnsún jùu thíi chianmàj kii pii	kháw pen jùu sǎam pii

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 23.5 EXERCISES

- a) Different students will find out how long other students have been doing different kinds of activities. The following are some examples: (1) living here, (2) learning Thai, (3) married, (4) playing some sport, (5) knowing how to do something, such as driving a car, etc.
- b) One student will give a short biography of himself. Other students will question him about certain parts of it, in particular how long some parts of it lasted (egs. how long he was in the armed forces, etc.).
- c) One student says he went some particular place. A second student asks him why he went there. When the first student gives a reason, the second one asks him why he didn't go some other place. The first student gives his reasons.

### 23.6 VOCABULARY

ookinaawaa	Okinawa
cháť	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
jàaŋ mâak	at most
jàaŋ nǒɔj	at least
lít	liter
maa kǝn	previously
noorawee	Norway
phêŋ	just
thýŋ	that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

#### 24.0 BASIC EPISODE: Part I

khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thǎi roonrian sǎon phaasǎa khǎon krasuan tǎanprathêet . khǎw rian maa dǎj sǎon dyan léew . khǎw ca rian ìik sǎi dyan , léew ca paj myanthatj . khǎw ca paj jùu myanthatj jǎanǎoj raaw sǎon pii, jǎanmǎak sǎi pii . khǎw ca phaa phanrajaa lé lúuklúuk khǎon khǎw paj dǎaj . khǎw kà wǎa khǎw ca òok càak woochintǎn wanthǎi sǎp karákadaakhom, ca khǎp rót paj bǎan phǎomêe khǎw thǎi rát pensilweenia . khǎw ca pháak jùu thǎinǎn hǎa wan, léew khǎw ca khǎp rót paj njujǎok . khǎw ca lon rya thǎi njujǎok lé paj khǎn thǎi farǎnsèet . càak farǎnsèet, khǎw ca bin paj room, eethén, teecharaan, niw delhi lé krunthêep. khǎw ca mǎj wé thǎaw teecharaan lé niw delhi tè khǎw ca wé thǎaw room sǎi wan lé eethén hǎa wan . khǎw kà wǎa khǎw ca thǎy krunthêep raawraaw wanthǎi nǎy sǎnhǎa.

#### 24.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thǎinǎj
2. khǎw rian maa dǎj naan thǎwrǎj léew
3. khǎw ca rian paj ìik kǎi dyan
4. léew khǎw ca paj nǎj
5. khǎw ca paj jùu myanthatj kǎi pii
6. khǎw ca phaa khraj paj dǎaj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. kháw kà ca òok càak wòochingtân mýaràj
8. kháw ca paj nǎj kòon . paj janṇaj
9. thammaj kháw tōṇ paj thīi niw jók
10. kháw ca paj khýn rya thīinǎj
11. càak farànsèet , kháw ca paj myan thaj dooj araj
12. kháw ca wé thīaw thīinǎj bān
13. kháw kà ca thýn myan thaj mýaràj

### 24.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sǒṇ dyan, myan thaj	kháw ca rian ìik <u>sǒṇ dyan</u> , lésw ca paj <u>myan thaj</u> He'll study for two more months, then go to Thailand.
2. sǐp wan, myan juan	kháw ca rian ìik <u>sǐp wan</u> , lésw ca paj <u>myan</u> <u>juan</u> He'll study for ten more days, then go to Viet Nam.
3. hòk aathít chianmàj	kháw ca rian ìik <u>hòk aathít</u> , lésw ca paj chianmàj He'll study for six more weeks, then go to Chiangmai.
4. nýn pii, phamâa	kháw ca rian ìik <u>nýn pii</u> , lésw ca paj <u>phamâa</u> He'll study for one more year, then go to Burma.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. sǒŋ sàpdaa      kháw ca rian ìik sǒŋ sàpdaa, léew ca paj laaw  
He'll study for two more weeks, then  
go to Laos.
6. nỳn pii, sawít      kháw ca rian ìik nỳn pii, léew ca paj sawít  
He'll study for one more year, then  
go to Switzerland.

### b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 3 aathít	khun ca rian ìik kii aathít How many more weeks will you study?	ìik sǎam aathít Three more weeks.
2. 4 pii	khun ca thamnaan ìik kii pii How many more years will you work?	ìik sii pii Four more years.
3. 10 pii	khun ca pen khâarâatchakaan ìik kii pii How many more years will you be a civil servant?	ìik sǐp pii Ten more years.
4. 15 naathii	khun ca jryn khooj kháw ìik kii naathii How many more minutes will you wait for him?	ìik siphâa naathii Fifteen more minutes.
5. 3 wan	khun ca thfaw ìik kii wan How many more days will you be on vacation?	ìik sǎam wan Three more days.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 2. | raaw dyan nâa phyân khun ca maa<br>thÿn mÿaràj<br>When will your<br>friend come? | kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca<br>maa thÿn raaw dyan nâa<br>He estimates he will<br>arrive next month.               |
| 3. | wancan nâa khun ca paj aw rôt<br>mÿaràj<br>When will you go<br>get the car?      | phôm kàa (wâa phôm) ca<br>paj aw wancan nâa<br>I plan to go get the<br>car next Monday.                     |
| 4. | raaw ìik sǎam khun ca bòok kháw<br>sìi wan mÿaràj<br>When will you<br>tell him?  | phôm kà (wâa phôm) ca<br>bòok kháw raaw ìik sǎam<br>sìi wan<br>I plan to tell him in<br>three or four days. |

e) Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2 into 3.)

Sentences 1 and 2

Sentence 3

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. kháw ca kháp rôt<br>kháw ca paj njujóok      | kháw ca kháp rôt paj njujóok<br>He'll drive to New York.          |
| 2. kháw ca dæen...<br>kháw ca paj roonrian      | kháw ca dæen paj roonrian<br>He'll walk to school.                |
| 3. kháw ca lon rya<br>kháw ca paj loondoon      | kháw ca lon rya paj loondoon<br>He'll take a boat to London.      |
| 4. kháw ca khÿn rôtmee<br>kháw ca paj ajúthajaa | kháw ca khÿn rôtmee paj ajúthajaa<br>He'll go to Ayuthaya by bus. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. kháw ca nân ryabin                      kháw ca nân ryabin paj myaŋ thaj  
    kháw ca paj myaŋ thaj                      He'll take a plane to Thailand.
6. kháw ca khÿn rôt faj                      kháw ca khÿn rôt faj paj chiaŋmàj  
    kháw ca paj chiaŋmàj                      He'll take a train to Chiangmai.

### f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. rooŋrɛɛm eerawan, hâa wan	kháw ca phá k jùu thîi <u>rooŋrɛɛm</u> <u>eerawan hâa wan</u> He'll stay at the Erawan Hotel for five days.
2. bâan phÿan, sǒŋ aathít	kháw ca phá k jùu thîi <u>bâan phÿan</u> <u>sǒŋ aathít</u> He'll stay at his friend's house for two weeks.
3. chaaj thalee, nÿŋ dyan	kháw ca phá k jùu thîi <u>chaaj thalee</u> <u>nÿŋ dyan</u> He'll stay at the beach for a month.
4. parít, 4 chûamooŋ	kháw ca phá k jùu thîi <u>parít sîi</u> <u>chûamooŋ</u> He'll stay in Paris for four hours.
5. bâan phǒm, nÿŋ pii	kháw ca phá k jùu thîi <u>bâan phǒm</u> <u>nÿŋ pii</u> He'll stay at my house for one year.





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. rya, njujóok, farànsèet	kháw ca loᅇ <u>rya</u> thîi <u>njujóok</u> paj khÿn thîi <u>farànsèet</u> He'll get on a boat in New York and get off in France.
2. khrÿanbin, woochintân, krunthêep	kháw ca khÿn <u>khrÿanbin</u> thîi <u>woochintân</u> lé loᅇ thîi <u>krunthêep</u> He'll get on a plane in Washington and get off in Bangkok.
3. rótfaj, ajúthajaa, chianmàj	kháw ca khÿn <u>rótfaj</u> thîi <u>ajúthajaa</u> lé loᅇ thîi <u>chianmàj</u> He'll get on the train in Ayuthaya and get off in Chiangmai.
4. ryabaj, pàaknám, baanpuu	kháw ca loᅇ <u>ryabaj</u> thîi <u>pàaknám</u> lé khÿn thîi <u>baanpuu</u> He'll get on a sail boat at Paknam and get off at Bangpu.
5. théeksîi, hǔalamphoon, prajsanii klaan	kháw ca khÿn <u>théeksîi</u> thîi <u>hǔalamphoon</u> lé loᅇ thîi <u>prajsanii</u> <u>klaan</u> He'll get in a taxi at Hualampong (Station) and get off at the Main Post Office.
6. ryacâan, thâapracan, sirirâat	kháw ca loᅇ <u>ryacâan</u> thîi <u>thâapracan</u> lé khÿn thîi <u>sirirâat</u> He'll get on a rented boat at Pracan landing and get off at Siriraj.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Sentence 1 and 2

1. kháw cam dâj  
kháw mií phýan khon thaj  
khon nyɲ

2. kháw cam dâj  
khun pháak jùu thîinǎj

3. kháw cam dâj  
khun phûut wâa araj

4. kháw cam dâj  
khun khœj paj myan̄thaj

5. kháw cam dâj  
kháw phóp khun thîi  
loondoon

6. kháw cam dâj  
khun pen khâarâatchakaan  
kràsuan̄ tàan̄ prathêet

#### Sentence 3

kháw cam dâj wâa (kháw) mií phýan  
khon thaj khon nyɲ  
He remembered he had a Thai  
friend.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun pháak jùu  
thîinǎj  
He remembered where you were  
staying.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun phûut wâa araj  
He remembered what you said.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun khœj paj  
myan̄thaj  
He remembered that you had  
been in Thailand.

kháw cam dâj wâa kháw phóp khun  
thîi loondoon  
He remembered he met you  
in London.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun pen  
khâarâatchakaan kràsuan̄ tàan̄  
prathêet  
He remembered that you  
were a State Department  
civil servant.

24.3 BASIC EPISODE: Part II

khun thoomás maa thǎyŋ krunthêep mǎa wan thǎi sǎwŋ  
sǎnhǎakhom . kháw pháak jùu thǎi roongrêem imphiirǎan  
tron sǎwŋ rǔam rýdii . phanrajaa lé lúuklúuk khǎwŋ  
kháw chǎop roongrêem níi máak phró jùu kláŋ sathǎanthúut ,  
ráanaahǎan lé ráan khǎajkhǎwŋ . thǎi roongrêem mii  
sà wǎajnáam. kháw wǎaj náam kan thúkwan

khun thoomás maa jùu myan thaj dǎj sǎam wan . kháw  
cam dǎj wǎa kháw mii phyǎn khon thaj khon nyn . phyǎn  
khonníi khǎej rian jùu kàp kháw thǎi mahǎawítthajalaj  
jeel mǎa sǐp pii thǎi léew . kháw khǎej rian jùu chán  
diaw kàp phyǎn khonníi lǎaj pii . kháw chǎop kan máak  
tè khun thoomás máj sǎap wǎa phyǎn kháw jùu thǎi nǎj .  
kháw cam dǎj wǎa phyǎn khonníi chǎy khun sǔnthǎon  
naamsakun mahǎasàk . wannyn kháw pèet sǎmut thoorasàp .  
kháw phóp chǎy khun sǔnthǎon . kháw thoo paj hǎa khun  
sǔnthǎon thǎi bǎan . khun sǔnthǎon diicaj máak . kháw  
chǎen khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua paj thaan khǎaw thǎi  
bǎan . kháw maa ráp khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua thǎi  
hooten lé phaa paj bǎan kháw . bǎan khun sǔnthǎon sǎaj  
máak . khun sǔnthǎon jàak háj khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua  
phák jùu kàp kháw . kháw chuan khun thoomas tè khun  
thoomas máj jàak rópkuwan khun sǔnthǎon.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 24.4 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE: Part II

1. khun thoomás maa thýŋ krunthêep mýaràj
2. kháw pháak jùu thfinǎj
3. khrôpkhrua khôŋ khun thoomás chôp roonreem thfi kháw pháak jùu máj . phró araj
4. khun thoomás khœej mií phýan thaj máj
5. kháw rúucàk kan dâj janŋaj
6. khun thoomás sâap máj wâa phýan khôŋ kháw jùu thfinǎj
7. kháw cam chýy lé naamsakun khôŋ phýan kháw dâj máj
8. kháw phóp khun sŋnthoon dâj janŋaj
9. khun sŋnthoon diicaj máj
10. kháw cheen khun thoomás lé khrôpkhrua paj bâan rýplàaw
11. khun thoomás paj bâan khun sŋnthoon janŋaj
12. khun sŋnthoon jáak hâj khun thoomás lé khrôpkhrua pháak jùu kàp kháw máj
13. kháw tham janŋaj
14. thammaj khun thoomás thýŋ mâj pháak bâan khun sŋnthoon

### 24.5 EXERCISES

One student will describe a travel experience he has had using the basic episode as a model. Other students will ask questions about it.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 24.6 VOCABULARY

eethén	Athens
baanpuu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
chaaj	edge, rim, border
chaajthalee	the beach
diicaj	to be glad
haawaaj	Hawaii
hônkon	Hong Kong
jeel	Yale (University)
kà	to guess, estimate
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
niw delhi	New Delhi
pàaknáam	Pakram (name of an Amphoe)
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pracam	to be stationed
rópkuun	to trouble, bother
ryabaj	sail boat
ryacâan	rented boat
sàpdaa / sàppadaa	week (elegant usage)
sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sawít	Switzerland
sirirâat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sũnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
teeharaan	Teheran
thalee	sea
thoomás	Thomas
wé	to stop in, over

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

#### 25.0 BASIC DIALOG: Making an Acquaintance

- A: pen araj paj khráp  
mâj sabaaj rě  
What's the matter with you? Aren't you well?
- B: plàaw khráp, mâj dâj pen araj  
nuân noon  
mâyakhyynnîi paj naanlían  
lœej noon dỳk paj nõcj  
Nothing's the matter. I'm sleepy.  
Last night I went to a party so I got to bed a little late.
- A: sanùk máj khráp  
Was it fun? (Did you have a good time?)
- B: sanùk mâak  
Yes, it was. (I certainly did.)
- A: phóp khraj bâan  
Who did you meet there? (Who was there?)
- B: lăaj khon khráp  
phôm dâj phyan màj lăaj khon  
ôo, phôm phóp khonthaj khon  
nyŋ  
kháw bòok wâa pen phyan kàw  
khun  
A lot of people.  
I made a lot of new friends.  
Oh, I ran into a Thai.  
He said he was an old friend of yours.
- A: kháw chyy araj  
What was his name?
- B: phôm cam mâj dâj  
kháw hâj naambàt phôm  
tè phôm lyym aw maa  
I can't remember.  
He gave me his card, but I forgot to bring it.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 25.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) pen araj (paj) 'What's the matter (with you)?' is the normal way to inquire about what pain or ailment someone has.

1. If one has some kind of disease, he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen wàt 'I have a cold.'

phǒm pen khâj 'I have a fever.'

phǒm pen khâjwàt 'I have the flu.'

Or he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen rôok bít 'I have dysentery.'

phǒm pen rôok sâjtan 'I have appendicitis.'

phǒm pen rôok àhiwaa 'I have cholera.'

2. If one has an ache or pain, he will give its location:

phǒm pùat hǔa (Lit. I ache in the head.)  
'I have a headache.'

phǒm pùat thóon (Lit. I ache in the area of the  
intestines.)  
'I have a stomach ache.'

b) sanùk means 'to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time, etc.' It may have a place, thing, person, or activity as subject.

c) dâj has the meaning 'get, obtain, procure' when used as the main verb, as in the sentence phǒm dâj phýan màj lǎaj khon 'I made a lot of new friends.'

d) There are several ways to indicate 'lateness' in Thai. The choice is determined by the time of day referred to. Observe the following chart:



**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

Time of Day	Early	Late
Morning	cháaw	sǎaj
	tèe cháaw	
Late in the day	wan	khâm
	tèe wan	
Evening	hǔakhâm	dỳk
	tèe hǔakhâm	
Anytime	rew	cháa

e) When tèe (often ta) occurs before cháaw, wan, etc., it indicates that the speaker considers the earliness to be unexpected or unusual.

f) b̀ya means 'to be bored'; n̂ab̀ya means 'boring'. Observe the following examples:

ph̄om b̀ya (kháw, duu náns̄ȳy, etc.) 'I'm bored (with him, studying, etc.)'.

kháw tham h̄aj ph̄om b̀ya (He causes me to be bored.)  
'He bores me.'

n̄aj r̄yan̄n̄i n̂ab̀ya 'This movie is boring.'

g) saǹuk means 'to have fun, have a good time, enjoy oneself' or 'to be fun, entertaining'. Observe the following examples:

kháw saǹuk 'He's having a good time.'

tham̄naan th̄in̄n̄i m̄aj saǹuk 'Working here is not fun.'

kháw pen khon saǹuk 'He's a fun person.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- h) læj 'so' is a word used to connect conditional sentences with result sentences, thus

kháw pen khon nâabyà raw læj mâj jàak khuj kakháw  
'He's a dull person so we don't want to talk with him.'

- i) hâj 'to give' is followed by the object and then by the recipient of the object.

kháw hâj nânsýy phóm 'He gave a book to me.'

### 25.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw maa thamnaan sǎaj thúkwan tɛɛ wanní kháw  
maa { tɛɛ cháaw  
          { ta  
          He comes to work late everyday, but today he came early.
2. kháw kláp bâan khâm thúkwan tɛɛ wanní kháw klàp  
bâan { tɛɛ wan  
          { ta  
          He goes home late everyday, but today he went home early.
3. kháw khâw noon dýk thúk khiyn tɛɛ khiynní kháw  
noon { tɛɛ hǔakhâm  
          { ta  
          She goes to bed late every night, but tonight she went to bed early.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. kháw maa cháa samǎe tɛɛ wanní maa rew.

He always comes late, but today he came early.

5. khruu khon nán òok càak hōŋ cháa samǎe tɛɛ wanní  
kháw òok càak hōŋ rew.

That teacher always comes out of the room  
late, but today she came out early.

### b) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw khâw noon thīaŋ khyyn  
He went to bed at midnight.

2. kháw thaan aahǎankhâm weelaa  
hâa thûm  
She ate dinner at 11 p.m.

3. kháw tỳyn noon tii hâa  
He got up at 5 a.m.

4. kháw maa roonriian weelaa moon  
cháaw khryŋ  
He come to school at 7:30 a.m.

5. kháw bòok wâa kháw ca klàp  
maa wan thī sīp tɛɛ kháw  
klàp maa wan thī hâa  
He said he'd return on the  
tenth, but he returned on  
the fifth.

#### Pattern 2

kháw khâw noon dỳk.  
He went to bed late.

kháw thaan dỳk.  
She ate late.

kháw tỳyn noon cháaw  
He got up early.

kháw maa roonriian tɛɛ  
cháaw  
He came to school early.

kháw klàp maa rew.

He came back early.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>6. kháw khâw noon dỳk thúk khyyn<br/>tèe khyynníi kháw khâw noon<br/>weelaa sǒn thûm</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He goes to bed late every<br/>night, but tonight he went<br/>to bed at 8 p.m.</p> | <p>kháw khâw noon tèe hǔakhâm</p> <p style="padding-left: 100px;">He went to bed early.</p> |
|--|---|

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. kháw pen araj paj What's the matter with him?</p>	<p>kháw mâj sabaaj He's ill.</p>
<p>2. khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?</p>	<p>phǒm pùat , sǐisà                   { hǔa I have a headache.</p>
<p>3. khun cim pen araj What's the matter with Jim?</p>	<p>kháw pen wàt He has a cold.</p>
<p>4. phanrajaa khun pen araj paj What's the matter with your wife?</p>	<p>kháw pen khâj She has a fever.</p>
<p>5. khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?</p>	<p>phǒm mâj dâj pen araj. Nothing.</p>
<p>6. khun pen araj(paj) What's the matter with you?</p>	<p>phǒm pen khâjwàt I have the flu.</p>
<p>7. kháw pen araj (paj) What's the matter with him?</p>	<p>kháw pen rôok bìt He has dysentery.</p>



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. very	ɲaan sanùk máj Is the work amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
2. not at all	ɲaan sanùk máj Is the work amusing?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
3. very	náŋsýy lêmnií sanùk máj Is this book amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
4. not at all	jùu thîinîi sanùk máj Is living here fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
5. very	rian phaasăa thaj sanùk máj Is studying Thai fun?	sanùk mâak It's a lot of fun.
6. not at all	khuj kàp kháw sanùk máj Is talking to her fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
7. very	kháw phûut sanùk máj Is what he says amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
8. not at all	năŋ sanùk máj Was the movie fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Lexical Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. ñaan mâj sanùk  
The working isn't amusing.
2. thamñaan thîinîi mâj sanùk  
Working here isn't enjoyable.
3. năñ ryâñníi mâj sanùk  
This movie isn't amusing.
4. nán̄syŷ lêm̄níi mâj sanùk  
This book isn't amusing.
5. rian phaasăa thaj mâj sanùk  
Studying Thai isn't fun.

#### Pattern 2

1. ñaan nâab̀ya  
The work's dull.
2. thamñaan thîinîi nâab̀ya  
Working here is boring.
3. năñ rŷañníi nâab̀ya  
This movie is dull.
4. nán̄syŷ lêm̄níi nâab̀ya  
This book is boring.
5. rian phaasăa thaj nâab̀ya  
Studying Thai is boring.

### g) Lexical Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. raw sanùk  
We're having fun.
2. myâkhyyn thúk khon sanúk  
Last night everybody  
had fun.
3. phyân phôm sanùk  
My friend is having a good time.
4. phôm sanùk  
I'm having fun.

#### Pattern 2

1. raw mâj b̀ya  
We are not (being) bored.
2. myâkhyynnîi mâj mi khraj b̀ya  
Last night nobody found  
it dull.
3. phyân phôm mâj b̀ya  
My friend isn't bored.
4. phôm mâj b̀ya  
I'm not being bored.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Lexical Drill

	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1.	raw mâj sanùk We're not enjoying ourselves.	raw b̀ya We are bored.
2.	mâj mií khraj sanùk Nobody's having fun.	thúk khon b̀ya Everybody is being bored.
3.	khun còon mâj sanùk John is not enjoying himself.	khun còon b̀ya John is finding it dull.
4.	phǒm mâj sanùk I'm not having a good time.	phǒm b̀ya I'm being bored.

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>kháw</u> pen khon sanùk He's an amusing person.
1. phyân khun khonnán	<u>phyân khun khonnán</u> pen khon sanùk That friend of yours is an amusing person.
2. khun praphâat	<u>khun praphâat</u> pen khon sanùk Mr. Prapas is an amusing person.
3. khun phôo phǒm	<u>khun phôo phǒm</u> pen khon sanùk My father is an amusing person.
4. khun	<u>khun</u> pen khon sanùk You are an amusing person.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. nákrían màj khonnán                      nákrían màj khonnán pen khon sanùk  
That new student is an amusing  
person.

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. m̄ya khyynníi phǒm paj ñaanlían læej noon dýk paj nõoj  
Last night I went to a party, so I got to bed late.
2. kháw thíaw mâak (kháw) læej mâj sabaaj  
He goes out a lot, so he's not well.
3. kháw riíp paj myan̄thaj (kháw) læej mâj mií weelaa  
wé thíaw júróop  
He was in such a hurry to get to Thailand, that  
he didn't have time to stop off in Europe.
4. phǒm khít wâa khun sâap léew (phǒm) læej mâj dâj  
bòok khun  
I thought you already knew, so I didn't tell you.
5. phǒm riíp òok càak bâan (phǒm) læej lyym aw ñeen maa  
I left home in such a hurry, that I forgot to  
bring any money.
6. thěswníi mâj mií thíicòotrót phǒm læej tǒon maa rótme  
There's no place to park around here, so I had  
to take the bus.
7. wanníi, phanrajaa phǒm tǒon cháj rót phǒm læej tǒon  
maa théksíi  
Today my wife had to use the car, so I had to  
come by taxi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. kháw pen khon nâabyà raw læj mâj jaàk khuj kàp kháw  
He's such a dull person that we don't want to  
talk with him.
9. wanní phanrajaa ka lûukphǒm paj thîaw kan phǒm læj  
tǒn jùu bâan khon diaw  
Today my wife and children went out, so I had  
to stay home alone.
10. phûujǐn khonnán khít wâa khun tènnaan léew (kháw) læj  
mâj jaak paj thîaw kàp khun  
That woman thought you were married, so she didn't  
want to go out with you.
11. kháw phûut phaasǎa ankrít mâj dâj phǒm læj tǒn  
phûut phaasaathaj kàp kháw  
She doesn't speak English, so I must talk Thai to her.
12. phǒm wé bâan phyân læj klàp bâan cháa paj nõj  
I stopped at a friend's house, so I got home late.

k) Transformation Drill (Make a statement expressing what is  
in the conversational exchange using  
læj.)

### Pattern 1 and 2

1. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun  
thýn noon dýk paj  
Why did you go to  
bed so late?

sawàt: phró phǒm paj ñaanlián  
Because I went to  
a party.

### Pattern 3

khun sawàt paj ñaanlián  
kháw læj noon dýk paj nõj  
Somsak went to a party  
so he went to bed late.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cǒon thýn

mâj sabaaj

Why isn't John well?

sawàt: phró kháw thaان mâak paj

nòoj

Because he ate  
too much.

khun cǒon thaان mâak paj

nòoj kháw læj mâj sabaaj

John ate too much,  
so he isn't well.

3. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun

mâj wé thíaw júroòp

Why didn't you  
stop in Europe?

sawàt: phró phǒm mâj mii weelaa

Because I didn't  
have time.

khun sawàt mâj mii weelaa

kháw læj mâj dâj wé thíaw

júroòp.

Sawat didn't have time,  
so he didn't stop off  
in Europe.

4. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cǒon maa

rótmee

Why did John come  
by bus?

sawàt: phró kháw khàprót mâj pen

Because he can't drive.

khun cǒon khàprót mâj pen

læj tǒn maa rótmee.

John can't drive, so  
he came by bus.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun  
thýn phûut phaasǎa ankrít  
kàp kháw

Why do you speak  
English with them?

sawàt: phró kháw phûut phaasǎa  
thaj mâj pen

Because they can't  
speak Thai.

kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj  
mâj pen khun sawàt læj  
tǒn phûut phaasǎa ankrít  
ka kháw

They can't speak Thai,  
so Sawat has to speak  
English with them.

6. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cim mâj  
chǒp phûujǐn khonnán

Why doesn't Jim  
like that woman?

sawàt: phró phûujǐn khonnán  
mâj sǎaj

Because that woman  
isn't pretty.

phûujǐn khonnán mâj sǎaj  
khun cim læj mâj chǒp  
kháw

That woman isn't pretty,  
so Jim doesn't like her.

7. sǒmsàk: khun prichaa khráp,  
thammaj khun thýn mâj  
khâwcaj la khráp

Why didn't you  
understand?

sawàt: phró phǒm mâj dâj faŋ

Because I didn't  
listen.

khun prichaa mâj dâj faŋ  
kháw læj mâj khâwcaj

Pricha didn't listen,  
so he didn't understand.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt khráp,  
mýakhyynníí, thammaj  
khun thýn ríip klàp  
la khráp  
Why were you in such  
a hurry to leave last  
night, Sawat?

sawàt: phró phǒm byà

Because I was bored.

mýakhyynníí khun sawàt  
byà kháw lǎej ríip klàp

Last night Sawat was bored,  
so he left in a hurry.

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
|                   | kháw háj <u>naambàt</u> phǒm<br>He gave me his card.                    |
| 1. nánsýy lêm níí | kháw háj <u>nánsýy lêm níí</u> phǒm<br>He gave me this book.            |
| 2. nǎen           | kháw háj nǎen phǒm<br>He gave me some money.                            |
| 3. klǎnthàajrûup  | kháw háj <u>klǎnthàajrûup</u> phǒm<br>He gave me a camera.              |
| 4. wítthajú       | kháw háj <u>wítthajú</u> phǒm<br>He gave me a radio.                    |
| 5. bæe thoorasàp  | kháw háj <u>bæe thoorasàp</u> phǒm<br>She gave me her telephone number. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. lûuknóon kèn kèn      phǒm dâj lûuknóon kèn kèn lǎaj khon.  
 I procured several skilled subordinates.

n) Response Drill (Give negative answers to the questions.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. pen araj (paj) What's the matter with you?	mâj dâj pen araj Nothing.
2. kamlan tham araj What are you doing?	mâj dâj tham araj Nothing.
3. phûut araj What did you say?	mâj dâj phûut araj Nothing.
4. paj nǎj Where are you going?	mâj dâj paj nǎj Nowhere.
5. rúucàk khraj Who do you know?	mâj rúucàk khraj I don't know anybody.
6. jàak phóp khraj Who do you want to meet?	mâj jàak phóp khraj Nobody.
7. khít araj What are you thinking about?	mâj dâj khít araj Nothing.
8. sýy araj What did you buy?	mâj dâj sýy araj Nothing.
9. mií khraj hěn bân Did anybody see anything?	mâj mií khraj hěn Nobody saw anything.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 25.3 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another what is the matter with him. The second responds with some type of ailment.
- b) One student asks another whether he considers certain people, places, things, or activities to be amusing or fun. The second responds according to his opinion. The questions may be specific (the person you met at the party last night, etc.) or they may be general (learning Thai, etc.)
- c) Student A will ask Student B why he did or didn't do something (ex: Why did you go to bed late last night?). Student B will give a reason (ex: Because I went to a party). Student C will pretend he didn't understand and will ask Student A what was said (ex: Excuse me, I didn't understand. What did he say?). Student A will tell him. Use the following examples as a model:

Student A: m̄yakhynn̄fī, thammaj khun th̄ȳn n̄oon d̄ȳk paj

Student B: phr̄ó phóm paj ñaanl̄ían

Student C: kh̄ō̄th̄ō̄t, ph̄óm m̄āj kh̄āwcaj, kh̄áw b̄ò̄k  
w̄āa araj na khráp

Student A: m̄yakhynn̄fī, kh̄áw paj ñaanl̄ían l̄ə̄ej n̄oon  
d̄ȳk paj n̄ò̄oj

### 25.4 VOCABULARY

b̄ȳa	to be bored
d̄āj	to get, obtain, procure
h̄ŭa (h̄ŭa)	head
(pen) kh̄āj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) kh̄ājw̄at	(to have) flu
l̄ūkn̄ó̄oj (khon)	subordinate
lyym	to forget



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

nâabyà	to be dull
naŋ (rŷaŋ)	movie (story)
ŋuâŋŋoɔn	to be sleepy
pùat	to ache, have a pain
raaŋwan (jàaŋ)	prize (kind)
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bìt	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
sanùk	to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sĭisà	head (elegant word)
tès } ta }	cháaw very early
thóoŋ	stomach, intestinal area
(pen) wàt	(to have) a cold

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-SIX

#### 26.0 BASIC DIALOG: Discussion of Wedding Gifts

- A: khun sawàt há ?  
thǎam araj nõoj, dâj máj
- B: jindii há ?
- A: wan aathít níi, phǒm dâj  
ráp chœen paj ñaanlían
- B: ñaan araj há ?
- A: ñaan tènñaan  
phǒm mâj sâap wâa  
ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii
- B: hâj khǒõõcháj sihá
- A: chên araj mân
- B: chên khrýan khrua  
sámrap câwsáaw,  
khrýan cháj faj fáa  
rý khǒõõ sǔajsǔaj  
sámrap tèn bãan
- A: tœonthif khun tènñaan,  
khun dâj khǒõõkhwǎn  
araj mân há ?
- B: phǒm dâj thán ñeen lé khǒõõ há ?  
phýan baan khon kô hâj khǒõõ,  
baan khon kô hâj ñeen  
jâat jâat sùan mâak hâj ñeen
- Mr. Sawat, may I ask you something?  
Gladly.
- This Sunday I received an invitation to a party.  
What kind of a party?
- A wedding.  
I don't know what I should buy to give them.  
Give something to use.
- What for example?  
Kitchen utensils for the bride, electrical devices or pretty things to decorate the house with.
- When you got married, what are some of the presents you got?  
I got money and things.  
Some friends gave things; some gave money. Most of the relatives gave money.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 26.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) Note the following variant forms of the male and female polite particles:

<u>Statement:</u>	<u>Formal</u>	<u>Informal</u>
Male	khráp	háʔ
Female	khâ	hâ/há

Question:

Male	khráp	háʔ
Female	khá	há

- b) The relationship between cheen 'to invite' and dâj ráp cheen 'to be invited' is similar to the active: passive voice relationship in English.

khâw cheen phôm paj naanlian 'They invited me (to go) to a party.'

phôm dâj ráp cheen paj naanlian 'I was invited (to go) to a party.'

- c) Compounds like thaaŋ + roonrian refer to institutions as agents rather than as places. Observe the following examples:

thaaŋ roonrian hâj nánsýy phôm 'The school gave me some books.'

thaaŋ râatchakaan hâj nœn roonrian pii la pèst phan bàat 'The government gives 8,000 baht a year to the school.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 26.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The object complement of hâj 'to give' normally precedes the personal complement as in the following example:

kháw hâj nánsŷy phǒm 'He gave me a book.'

1. Specifier phrases of the object complement follow immediately after it (i.e. before the personal complement).

kháw hâj nánsŷy thîi kháw plɛɛ 'He gave me some books  
phǒm he had translated.'

kháw hâj nánsŷy sǒɔŋ lêm nán 'He gave me those two  
phǒm books.'

2. Quantifier phrases of the object complement occur after the personal complement:

kháw hâj nánsŷy phǒm sǒɔŋ lêm 'He gave me two books.'

kháw hâj nánsŷy kháw khon la 'He gave them two books  
2 lêm apiece.'

- b) Constructions of the type khon la 2 lêm 'two books apiece' are called Distributive constructions. They are used to refer to the distribution of objects according to a certain ratio. The distribution may refer to space as in the example above, or it may refer to time. Examples of each type are given below:

1. Space distribution:

kháw hâj nánsŷy nákrian khon 'He gave the students  
la sǒɔŋ lêm two books apiece.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 2. Time distribution:

kháw hâj nən khoncháj dyan      'He gave his servant  
la 800 bàat                      800 baht a month.'

- c) kô frequently occurs before the main verb phrase in each of the sentences in parallel sentence constructions. It is not translated.

nákrian baan khon kô kèn, baan      'Some students are good;  
khon kô mâj kèn                      some aren't.'

- d) When Noun Phrases with more than one noun head are replaced by Classifier Phrases, the classifier used in the replacement is determined by the types of nouns in the Noun Phrase:

<u>Noun Phrase</u>	<u>Classifier Phrase Replacement</u>
<u>thán</u> <u>khruu</u> <u>lé</u> <u>mǔo</u> 'Both teachers and doctors.'	<u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>khon</u> 'both kinds of people'
<u>thán</u> <u>nən</u> <u>lé</u> <u>aahǎan</u> 'Both money and food'	<u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>jàan</u> 'both kinds of things'
<u>thán</u> <u>krunthêep</u> <u>lé</u> <u>chianmàj</u> 'Both Bangkok and, Chiangmai.'	<u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>hèen</u> (or) <u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>myan</u> 'both places' (or) 'both cities'

- e) When di occurs with questions, it may indicate that the person asking the question is requesting advice (whether a certain course of action is good, suitable, or advisable) or is asking for a suggestion. The response, if short and definite, usually ends with sikhráp.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Question</u> + <u>di</u>	<u>Response</u>
phǒm ca hâj araj <u>di</u> 'What shall I give?'	hâj khǒncháj <u>sihá</u> 'Give something useful.'

### 26.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Transformation Drill

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. kháw chœen phǒm paj ñaanlían They invited me to a party.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj ñaanlían I got an invitation to a party.
2. kháw chœen phǒm paj ñaan tœnñaan khǒn kháw She invited me to her wedding.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan tœnñaan khǒn kháw I received an invitation to her wedding.
3. kháw chœen phǒm paj prachum thîi myan bóssatân He invited me to a meeting in Boston.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj prachum thîi myan bóssatân I received an invitation to a meeting in Boston.
4. kháw mâj dâj chœen phǒm paj ñaan thîi sathǎanthûut He didn't invite me to the party at the Embassy.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan thîi sathǎanthûut I didn't get an invitation to the party at the Embassy.
5. kháw mâj dâj chœen phǒm paj ñaan nákrían kàw He didn't invite me to the party for former students.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan nákrían kàw I didn't get an invitation to the party for former students.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw hâj araj khun khráp What did he give you?	kháw hâj ñen phǒm khráp He gave me some money.
2. thaang roonriian hâj araj khun khráp What did the school give you?	thaang roonriian hâj nánssýy riian phǒm khráp The school gave me a textbook.
3. toon thfi khun tènnaan, naaj khǒon khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your boss give you when you got married?	toon thfi phǒm tènnaan naaj khǒon phǒm hâj wítthajú phǒm khráp When I got married, my boss gave me a radio.
4. wan khrítsamâat pii níi, khun ca hâj araj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to give your wife this Christmas?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca hâj khrýangkhrua kháw khráp I think I'll give her kitchen implements.
5. phfiichaaaj khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your older brother give you?	phfiichaaaj phǒm hâj pàakkaa phǒm khráp. My older brother gave me a pen.
6. khun ca hâj araj lûukchaaaj khun khráp What are you going to give your son?	phǒm ca hâj dinsǒo lé samùt lûukchaaaj phǒm khráp I'm going to give my son a pencil and a notebook.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>7. phŷan phŷan khun hâj khǒŋ<br/>khwǎn araj khun khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What kind of presents did<br/>your friends give you?</p> | <p>kháw hâj nən phǒm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">They gave me money.</p>                                       |
| <p>8. nákpħaasáa khon nán hâj<br/>araj khun khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did that linguist<br/>give you?</p>                         | <p>kháw hâj nánsŷy thŷi kháw<br/>plæ phǒm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave me a book<br/>he translated.</p> |

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun phǒŋ khun mĕs khǒŋ khun hâj nən khun thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much money did your parents give you?</p>	<p>khun phǒŋ khun mĕs khǒŋ phǒm hâj nən phǒm hâa phan bàat khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">My parents gave me five thousand baht.</p>
<p>2. kháw hâj nən khoncháj kháw dyan la thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much does he give his servants per month?</p>	<p>kháw hâj nən khoncháj kháw dyan.la sŷirǒj bàat khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gives his servants four hundred baht per month.</p>
<p>3. thaarâatchakaan hâj nən roonrian pii la thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much does the government give the school a year?</p>	<p>thaarâatchakaan hâj nən roonrian pii la pĕst phan bàat khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The government gives the school 8,000 baht a year.</p>



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. thaangroonrian hâj nânsÿy<br/>nâkrian khon la kîi lêm<br/>khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many books per student<br/>does the school give?</p>   | <p>thaangroonrian hâj nânsÿy<br/>nâkrian khon la sǒng lêm<br/>khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school gives two books<br/>to each student.</p>   |
| <p>5. thaangráan hâj khǒng khwǎn<br/>kháw kîi chin khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many presents did<br/>the shop give them?</p>   | <p>thaangráan hâj khǒng khwǎn<br/>kháw sǎam chin khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The shop gave them<br/>three presents.</p>   |
| <p>6. kháw hâj khǒngkhwǎn khun<br/>kîi jàan khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many kinds of presents<br/>did he give you?</p>  | <p>kháw hâj khǒngkhwǎn (kèε)<br/>phǒm jàan diaw khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave me one kind of<br/>present.</p>   |
| <p>7. kháw hâj nânsÿy hōnsamùt<br/>kîi lêm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many books did he<br/>give to the library?</p>  | <p>kháw hâj nânsÿy (kèε)<br/>hōnsamùt hâa sǐp lêm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave fifty books to<br/>the library.</p>   |
| <p>8. thaangkrasuaṅtâanprathêet hâj<br/>ṅen khâa nânsÿy khun khon<br/>la thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much did the State<br/>Department give each<br/>person for books?<br/>(lit. give you per person.)</p> | <p>thaangkrasuaṅtâanprathêet hâj<br/>ṅen khâa nânsÿy raw khon<br/>la sǎam sǐp dōo lâa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The State Department gave<br/>us 30 dollars per person<br/>for books.</p> |
| <p>9. khun hâj ṅen lûuk wan la<br/>thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much money per day<br/>do you give your child?</p>  | <p>phǒm hâj ṅen lûuk wan la<br/>sǒng bàat khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I give him/her 2 baht<br/>per day.</p>  |

NOTE: kèε 'to' may be used in rather formal style or in cases where ambiguity might occur as in the examples above in which the receiver might be confused with possessor.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khraj hâj nánsÿy sǒŋ lêm níi khun khráp Who gave you these two books?</p>	<p>nákphaasǎa hâj (nánsÿy sǒŋ lêm níi) phǒm khráp The linguist gave me these two books.</p>
<p>2. khraj hâj samùt sìi lêm níi khun khráp Who gave you these four notebooks?</p>	<p>phÿan phǒm hâj samùt sìi lêm níi phǒm khráp My friend gave me these four notebooks.</p>
<p>3. khraj hâj pàakkaa dâam níi khun khráp Who gave you this pen?</p>	<p>khun ànúróot hâj pàakkaa dâam níi phǒm khráp Anuroj gave me this pen.</p>
<p>4. khraj hâj rûup baj níi khun khráp Who gave you this picture?</p>	<p>phátthanaakoŋ khon nán hâj rûup baj níi phǒm khráp That community development worker gave me this picture.</p>
<p>5. khraj hâj phěnthîi sǒŋ phèen níi khun khráp Who gave you these two maps?</p>	<p>boorisàt námman hâj phěnthîi sǒŋ phèennií phǒm khráp The gasoline company gave me these two maps.</p>
<p>6. khraj hâj nánsÿy phaasǎa thaj sìp lêm níi kèe hŏŋsamùt khráp Who gave these ten Thai language books to the library?</p>	<p>krasuaŋ kaantàanprathêet ameerikan hâj nánsÿy sìp lêm níi kèe hŏŋsamùt khráp The American Department of State gave these ten books to the library.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Transformation Substitution Drill

Instructor: kháw hâj náŋsŷy lêm níi phǒm

: náŋsŷy sǒŋ lêm

Student: kháw hâj náŋsŷy phǒm sǒŋ lêm

Continue by substituting the following items in the appropriate structure.

1. pàakkaa dâam níi
2. kâwíi sǎam tua
3. nən camnuan níi
4. nən hâa rǒŋj bàat
5. nən khâa aahǎan
6. bâan lǎŋ níi
7. dɪnsǒŋ thêŋ nán
8. weelaa sǒŋ chûamoon

### f) Sentence Construction Drill

Using the cue words given student 1 will form a question with hâj as the main verb. Student 2 will give an appropriate answer. (Study the examples below carefully.)

Example 1.

I:• phŷan phŷan , araj, khun

S 1: phŷan phŷan hâj araj khun khráp

S 2: kháw hâj náŋsŷy phǒm khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Example 2:

- I: phyan phyan , khun, nãnsýy kii lêm  
S 1: phyan phyan hãj nãnsýy khun kii lêm khráp  
S 2: kháw hãj nãnsýy phõm sõõn lêm khráp

Example 3:

- I: phyan phyan , khun, nãnsýy lêm níi, rýy  
S 1: phyan phyan hãj nãnsýy lêm níi khun rýy khráp  
S 2: khráp (or) plàaw khráp

Example 4:

- I: khraj, khun, nãnsýy sõõn lêm níi  
S 1: khraj hãj nãnsýy sõõn lêm níi khun khráp  
S 2: khruu hãj nãnsýy sõõn lêm níi phõm khráp

Continue by using the following cue words:

1. câwnâathfi juusít, khun , araj
2. khun praphâat, khun, phěenthfi prathêetthaj, kii phèen
3. krasuanṭàanprathêet, nákrían, nœen khãanãnsýy, khon la thãwràj
4. khun, phanrajaa khun, khõõnkhwãn, thúk pii, rýplàaw
5. khraj, khun, samùt lêm níi
6. khraj, khun, samùt sõõn lêm
7. khraj, khun, tó tua níi
8. kháw, khun, nœen kii bàat
9. kháw, khon cháj, nœen, dyan la, kii bàat
10. khun cõõn, khun, pàakkaa dãam níi, rýy
11. kháw, phõm, weelaa, nỳn chũamoon

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What did you buy your wife?	phǒm sýy pàakkaa hâj kháw nỳn dâam khráp I bought her a pen.
2. wan khrítsamâat pii nâa khun ca sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to buy your wife for Christmas next year?	phǒm ca sýy naalikaa hâj kháw khráp I'm going to buy a watch for her.
3. wan tènnaan khǒon phýan khun khun sýy araj hâj kháw khráp What did you buy for your friend on his wedding day?	phǒm sýy khǒon sǎmràp tèn bâan hâj kháw khráp I bought things for deco- rating the house for him.
4. pii thîi léew phanrajaa khun sýy araj hâj khun What did your wife buy for you last year?	kháw sýy sýa hâj phǒm nỳn tua She bought a shirt for for me.
5. khun ca sýy araj hâj phýan khun What are you going to buy for your friend?	phǒm khít wâa ca sýy nánsýy diidi hâj kháw I think I'll buy him some good books.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Familiarization Drill

1. A: khun sǒmsǐi hâj rûup phǒm  
Miss Somsri gave me some pictures.
- B: khun dâj rûup càak khun sǒmsǐi kǐi baj khráp  
How many pictures did you get from Miss Somsri?
- A: phǒm dâj rûup càak khun sǒmsǐi hâa baj khráp  
I got five pictures from Miss Somsri.
2. A: khun phôo khun mēε hâj nēn phǒm  
My parents gave me some money.
- B: khun dâj nēn càak khun phôokhun mēε kǐi bàat khráp  
How many baht did you get from your parents?
- A: phǒm dâj nēn càak khunphôo khun mēε lǎaj rǒoj  
bàat khráp  
I got several hundred baht from my parents.
3. A: thaaj sathǎanthûut hâj nǎnsǎy tǎantǎan kēε  
roonrian raw.  
The Embassy gave various books to our school.
- B: raw dâj nǎnsǎy càak sathǎanthûut kǐi lēm khráp  
How many books did we get from the Embassy?
- A: raw dâj nǎnsǎy tǎan tǎan càak sathǎanthûut raaw  
raaw sǎamsǐp lēm khráp  
We got about 30 different books from the Embassy.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. A: krasuan tàanprathêet hâj ñen khâa nânsÿy raw  
The State Department gave us money for  
buying books.

B: raw dâj ñen khâa nânsÿy khon la thâwràj kháp  
How much money did each person get for  
buying books?

A: raw dâj ñen khâa nânsÿy khon la sãamsìp doolâa kháp  
We got 30 dollars a person (for buying books).

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. khǎonkhwǎn	phǎm dâj <u>khǎonkhwǎn</u> I got presents.
2.	phǎm dâj <u>ñen lǎaj rǎoj</u> I got several hundred (baht).
3. ñaan	phǎm dâj <u>ñen</u> I got work.
4. bâan	phǎm dâj <u>bâan</u> I got a house.
5. khǎoncháj	phǎm dâj <u>khǎoncháj</u> I got things to use.
6. nânsÿy 2 lêm	phǎm dâj <u>nânsÿy sǎon lêm</u> I got two books.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 7. khrÿaŋ fajfáa               | phǒm dâj <u>khrÿaŋ fajfáa</u><br>I got electrical equipment.           |
| 8. wítthajú                    | phǒm dâj <u>wítthajú</u><br>I got a radio.                             |
| 9. thii wii                    | phǒm dâj <u>thii wii</u><br>I got a TV.                                |
| 10. kâwii màj                  | phǒm dâj <u>kâwii màj</u><br>I got a new chair.                        |
| 11. bæe thoorasàp<br>khǒŋ kháw | phǒm dâj <u>bæe thoorasàp</u> khǒŋ kháw<br>I got her telephone number. |
| 12. khansèn dii                | phǒm dâj <u>khansèn dii</u><br>I got good grades.                      |

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. phǒm khuan ca hâj araj kháw What shall I give him?	hâj náŋsÿy sikhráp Give a book.
2. phǒm khuan ca sÿy araj hâj phanrajaa dii What shall I give my wife?	sÿy khrÿaŋkhrua hâj kháw sikhráp Buy some kitchen utensils for her.
3. phǒm khuan ca thăam khraj dii Who shall I ask?	thăam nákpahasăa sikhráp Ask the linguist.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. phǒm khuan ca thaan thîi                      thaan thîi ráanníi sikráp  
ráannǎj dii  
Which restaurant shall                      Eat at this restaurant.  
I eat at?
5. phǒm khuan ca paj janṇaj dii                      paj rótfaj sikhráp  
How shall I go?                      Go by train.

### k) Expansion Drill

1. araj dii  
sýy araj dii  
khuon ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii  
phǒm ca sýy khǒṅkhwǎn araj hâj kháw dii
2. khraj dii  
chæen khraj dii  
ca chæen khraj dii  
raw khuan ca chæen khraj dii
3. khraj dii  
thǎam khraj dii  
khuon ca thǎam khraj dii  
phǒm khuan ca thǎam khraj dii
4. nǎj dii  
thîinǎj dii  
thaan thîinǎj dii  
thaan aahǎan thîinǎj dii  
thaan aahǎan khlaanwan thîinǎj dii  
khuon ca thaan aahǎan klaanwan thîinǎj dii  
raw khuan ca thaan aahǎan klaanwan thîinǎj dii

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. nǎj dii  
bòt nǎj dii  
rian bòt nǎj dii  
khuān ca rian bòt nǎj dii  
raw khuān ca rian bòt nǎj dii
6. nǎj dii  
wan nǎj dii  
lían wan nǎj dii  
mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii  
khuān ca mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii  
raw khuān ca mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii
7. jaṅṅaj dii  
tham jaṅṅaj dii  
khuān ca tham jaṅṅaj dii  
phǒm khuān ca tham jaṅṅaj dii

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

sámràp means 'for' in the sense of function (for doing such and such).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hōṅnám hōṅníi, <u>sámràp</u> khraj Who is this toilet for?	hōṅnám hōṅníi, <u>sámràp</u> phūujǐṅ This toilet is for women. (mâj châj <u>sámràp</u> phūuchaaj) It's not for men.
2. kâwīi tuaníi, <u>sámràp</u> khraj Who is this chair for?	kâwīi tuaníi, <u>sámràp</u> khruu This chair is for the teacher. (mâj châj <u>sámràp</u> nákrían) It's not for students.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. khrÿaᅇkhrua chútníi, sámràp khraj  
Who is this set of kitchen utensils for?
- khrÿaᅇkhrua chútníi sámràp cawsǎaw  
It's for the bride.  
(mâj châj sámràp câwbàaw.)  
It's not for the groom.
4. ᅇeᅇ camnuan níi, pen ᅇeᅇ sámràp tham araj  
What is this amount of money for (for doing what)?
- ᅇeᅇ camnuan níi pen ᅇeᅇ sámràp sýy aahǎan  
This sum of money is for food.
5. náᅇsýy lêm níi, cháj sámràp tham araj khráp  
What is this book used for?
- náᅇsýy lêm níi, cháj sámràp sǒᅇn nákrían  
This book is used for teaching students.
6. hᅇᅇníi cháj sámràp tham araj  
What is this room used for?
- hᅇᅇníi cháj sámràp prachum nákrían  
This room is used for student meetings.
7. bâan lǎaj lǎᅇ thǐi jùu tronkan khâam kàp sathǎanthûut pen thǐi sámràp tham araj khráp  
What are the (several) houses opposite the Embassy for?
- pen thǐi sámràp phanáᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇ sathǎanthûut jùu khráp  
They are for Embassy employees to live in.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. thîi roonriian sǒon phaasǎa<br>kháw cháj nánsǎy araj<br>What books do they use<br>at the language school? | thîi roonriian sǒon phaasǎa,<br>kháw cháj nánsǎy khǒon roonriian<br>At the language school<br>they use the school's<br>books. |
| 2. khun cháj rót araj<br>What kind of car<br>did you use?  | phǒm cháj rót ameerikan<br>I used an American car.  |
| 3. kháw cháj nǎn wan la kǐi<br>doo lâa<br>How many dollars does<br>he spend per day?                         | kháw cháj nǎn wan la hâa<br>sǐp sen.<br>He spends 50 cents<br>a day.  |
| 4. thîi myan thaj, kháw cháj<br>nǎen araj<br>What kind of money do<br>they use in Thailand?                  | thîi myan thaj, kháw cháj<br>nǎen bàat<br>In Thailand they use<br>'bahts'.  |
| 5. khun cháj araj (sámràp)<br>khǎn nánsǎy<br>What do you use for<br>writing?                                 | phǒm cháj thán pàakkaa lé<br>dinsǒo (sámràp) khǎn nánsǎy<br>I use both pen and pencil<br>for writing.                         |

### n) Expansion Drill

1. baan khon pen thahǎan  
nákriian baan khon pen thahǎan  
nákriian thîinîi baan khon pen thahǎan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. baan lêm dii  
nán̄sǎy baan lêm dii  
nán̄sǎy phaasǎa thaj baan lêm dii
3. baan khr̄yān cháj māj dāj  
khr̄yān baan khr̄yān cháj māj dāj  
khr̄yān fajfáa baan khr̄yān cháj māj dāj
4. baan tambon māj mi náam  
tambon baan tambon māj mi náam  
tambon th̄i j̄uu klaj klaj baan tambon māj mi náam

o) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. ph̄yan            | <u>ph̄yan</u> baan khon k̄o hāj kh̄ōn, baan khon k̄o hāj n̄en<br>Some friends gave things; some, money.              |
| 2. khruu             | <u>khruu</u> baan khon k̄o hāj kh̄ōn, baan khon k̄o hāj n̄en<br>Some teachers gave things; some, money.              |
| 3. m̄ō               | <u>m̄ō</u> baan khon k̄o hāj kh̄ōn, baan khon k̄o hāj n̄en<br>Some doctors gave things; some, money.                 |
| 4. kh̄aar̄aatchakaan | <u>kh̄aar̄aatchakaan</u> baan khon k̄o hāj kh̄ōn, baan khon k̄o hāj n̄en<br>Some employees gave things; some, money. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. câwnâathîi                      câwnâathîi baan khon kô hâj khǒn, baan  
khon kô hâj nən  
Some officials gave things; some, money.

p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kèn	nákrian baan khon kô <u>kèn</u> , baan khon kô mâj <u>kèn</u> Some students are good; some aren't.
2. sǔaj	nákrian baan khon kô <u>sǔaj</u> , baan khon kô mâj <u>sǔaj</u> Some students are pretty; some aren't.
3. phûujǐn	<u>phûujǐn</u> baan khon kô sǔaj, baan khon kô mâj sǔaj Some women are pretty; some aren't.
4. dii	phûujǐn baan khon kô <u>dii</u> , baan khon kô mâj <u>dii</u> Some women are good; some aren't.
5. nánsǔy	<u>nánsǔy</u> baan lêm kô dii, baan lêm kô mâj dii Some books are good; some aren't.
6. sanùk	nánsǔy baan lêm kô <u>sanùk</u> , baan lêm kô mâj <u>sanùk</u> Some books are amusing; some aren't.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun rúucàk thǎn sǎamii lé <u>phanrajaa</u> rýkhráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Do you know both the husband and wife?</p>	<p>khráp, phǒm rúucàk kháw <u>thán sǒn khon</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Yes, I know both of them.</p>
<p>2. khun chǒp <u>thán phaasǎathaj</u> <u>lé aahǎanthaj</u> rýkhráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Do you like both the Thai language and Thai food?</p>	<p>khráp, phǒm chǒp <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn jàan</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Yes. I like both (things).</p>
<p>3. khun khǎej jù <u>thán farànsèet</u> <u>lé sapeen</u> rýkhráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Have you lived in both France and Spain?</p>	<p>khráp, phǒm khǎej jù <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn prathêet</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Yes, I have lived in both countries.</p>
<p>4. khun phûut dâj <u>thán phaasǎa</u> <u>ciin lé phaasǎa rátsia</u> rýkhráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Can you speak both Chinese and Russian?</p>	<p>khráp, phǒm phûut dâj <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn phaasǎa</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Yes, I can speak both languages.</p>
<p>5. khun khǎej jù <u>thán chianmàj</u> <u>lé krunthêep</u> rýkhráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Have you lived in both Chiangmai and Bangkok?</p>	<p>khráp, phǒm khǎej jù <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn hèn</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Yes, I have lived in both places.</p>
<p>6. khun hâj <u>thán nèn lé aahǎan</u> kháw rýy khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you give him both money and food?</p>	<p>khráp, phǒm hâj kháw <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn jàan</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Yes, I gave him both things.</p>



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. kháw dâj khanɛɛn dii thán khraaw      khráp, kháw dâj khanɛɛn dii  
thîi léɛw lé khraawníi rýy knráp      thán sǒɔŋ khraaw (khrán)
- Did he get good grades both                      Yes, he got good  
the time before and this                              grades both times.  
time?

### s) Noun Compound Drill

Form Noun Compounds like      khryǎŋ +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noun} \\ \text{Verb} \end{array} \right.$

<u>Verb</u> or <u>Noun</u>	<u>Noun Compound</u>
1. cháj            'to use'	khryǎŋcháj            'things to see'
2. khrua            'kitchen'	khryǎŋkhrua            'kitchen utensils'
3. khǎan            'to write'	khryǎŋkhǎan            'writing equipment'
4. tèn bân            'to decorate a house'	khryǎŋtèn bân            'house decoration'

### 26.4 EXERCISES

- a) Students will discuss invitations they have received specifying type of activity, time, and place.
- b) Students will discuss various gifts they have given and received.
- c) One student will ask another's opinion about something he is considering doing (giving a gift, etc.). The second will give his opinion.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 26.5 VOCABULARY

anúrôot	Anuroj (male first name)
bæe	number
camnuan	amount
câwsăaw (khon)	bride
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money)
chín	piece (classifier for things)
chút	set of (something)
há/hâ	the male and female polite particles informal for khráp or khâ, in responses
jàan	classifier for things
jâat/jâatjâat	relative(s)
kàw	old (of non living things), former (of living and non living things)
kèe	to, for
khâa	fee, cost, price, value
khansən (khansən)	grade, score point(s)
khoncháj (khon)	servant
khǒncháj (jàan, an, chín)	something useful, utensils
khrÿan cháj fájfáa (khrÿan)	electrical
khrÿan faj fáa (khrÿan)	electrical equipment
khryânkhrua (khrÿan)	kitchen utensils
khrÿan ryan (khrÿan)	furniture
krasuan kaantàan prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khráŋ	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
khrítsamâat	Christmas
<u>la</u> or <u>lá</u>	per, a, the
mâŋ	some, any (pronominal, another form of <u>bâaŋ</u> )
naaj (khon)	boss
nákphaasáa (khon)	linguistic scientist
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
phanákŋaan (khon)	employee
pháthanaakoon (khon)	community development worker
plæ	to translate
prachum	meeting
sámràp	for
si	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
súanmâak	most of, in the main
tèn	to decorate
thii wii (khrýaŋ)	TV
wítthajú (khrýaŋ, an)	radio

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

#### 27.0 BASIC DIALOG: Sending a Servant for a Taxi

naaj:	chûaj rîak thésîi hâj (phôm) khan nyn bòok kháw wâa paj sǎthoon læej cátsamèk paj nòj	Please call a taxi for me. Tell him (I'm) going to Sathorn a little past JUSMAG.
khoncháj:	ca hâj kháw khooj dûaj máj khá	Will you have him wait?
naaj:	mâj tôn	That's not necessary.
	(khoncháj klàp maa)	(The servant returns)
naaj:	dâj rôt máj	Did you get one?
khoncháj:	dâj khà	Yes, I did.
naaj:	kháw aw thâwràj	How much does he want?
khoncháj:	síp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht.
naaj:	mâj phɛɛn paj lǎ thammadaa, weelaa chán rîak eɛn , kháw khít pèet bàat thâwnán	That's not too much? Usually when I get one myself, they charge only 8 baht.
khoncháj:	tɔɔnníi, kamlan læek naan.thésîi hǎa jâak khâ.tòɔ mâj khôj dâj	It's quitting time now. Taxis are hard to find. Bargaining is hardly possible.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) chán 'I' is rarely used by men except when speaking to persons of inferior social status. Women use it more often. They used it (1) with persons of inferior social status, (2) to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.<sup>1</sup>
- b) khít thâwràj 'figured or reckoned as how much?' is a reduced form of khít raakhaa thâwràj 'the price is reckoned as how much?' or khít khâadoojsaan thâwràj 'The fare is reckoned as how much?'.
- c) After stative verbs like phsɛŋ 'expensive', kɛən paj may occur with the meaning 'excessively, too'. paj occurs in the same position as a reduced form of kɛən paj.
- d) toon thîi and weelaa both refer to time and may be translated 'when'; however, weelaa usually refers to a special occasion; weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj 'When (ever) I don't understand', whereas, toon thîi refers to a particular period of time toon thîi khun pen dèk 'When you were a child'.

### 27.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) hâj occurs in constructions of the following kind:
1. As main verb in the sentence (see 26.2a),
  2. As secondary verb with the meaning 'for the benefit or, in place of someone else', chuâj khàp rôt hâj (phǒm) 'Please drive for me' khâw tham aahǎan hâj khun thaan 'He makes food for you (to eat).'
  3. Or as the main verb with a sentence complement. In constructions of this type it has causative meaning. khun ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj 'What are you going to have your children study?'

---

<sup>1</sup>See Noss, pg. 100.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) The verbs bòok 'tell', khǎo 'request', anujâat 'permit' and sàŋ 'order' (like jaak, see 22.2b) are followed by hâj plus Sentence Complement when the utterance tends to be causative in effect.

kháw bòok hâj phǒm khooj kháw

'He told me to wait for him.'

kháw anujâat hâj phǒm rian phaasǎathaj

'He permitted me to study Thai.'

Compare the following two sentences:

1. kháw hâj phǒm khooj kháw 'He had me wait for him.

The manner in which the request or command is delivered is not specified.

2. kháw bòok hâj phǒm khooj kháw 'He told me to wait for him.'

The manner in which the command or request is delivered is specified.

- c) eeŋ occurs at the end of clauses and has the meaning 'by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help or influence'<sup>1</sup>.

phǒm paj sýy (kaafɛɛ) eeŋ kh ráp

'I went to buy coffee myself'.

(Nobody bought it for me.)

---

<sup>1</sup>See Noss, pg. 93

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khraj tòɔ raakhaa <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who did your bargaining for you?	phÿan khon thaj khǒɔŋ phǒm tòɔ (raakhaa) <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp A Thai friend of mine did the bargaining for me.
2. khraj khàp rót <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who drove the car for you?	phǒm khàp <u>eeŋ</u> khráp I drove (it) myself. (mâj mi khraj khàp hâj) No one drove for me.
3. khraj tham aahǎan <u>hâj</u> khun thaan khráp Who cooks for you?	phanrajaa phǒm tham (aahǎan) <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp My wife cooks for me.
4. phÿan khun paj sÿy kaafɛɛ <u>hâj</u> khun rÿy khráp Did your friend go buy coffee for you?	plàaw khráp, phǒm paj sÿy (kaafɛɛ) <u>eeŋ</u> khráp No, I bought (it) myself.
5. khraj khÿan còtmǎaj chabàp níi <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who wrote this letter for you?	phǒm khÿan <u>eeŋ</u> khráp I wrote it myself.
6. khraj hǎa bǎan <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who looked for a house for you?	phǒm hǎa <u>eeŋ</u> khráp I looked myself.
7. khraj sÿy aahǎan hâj khun khráp Who bought food for you?	phanrajaa phǒm sÿy <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp My wife bought it for me.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. phanrajaa phǒm	phǒm mâj dâj tham aahǎan een I don't cook for myself.	<u>phanrajaa phǒm</u> tham hâj (phǒm) My wife cooks for me.
2. phÿan phǒm	phǒm mâj dâj khÿan còtmǎaj chabàp níi een I didn't write this letter myself.	<u>phÿan phǒm</u> khÿan hâj A friend of mine wrote it for me.
3. khun thǎawoon	phǒm mâj dâj sÿy nánsÿy lêm níi een I didn't buy this book myself.	<u>khun thǎawoon</u> sÿy hâj Thaworn bought it for me.
4. khon khàprót	phǒm mâj dâj khàp rót een I didn't drive myself.	<u>khon khàprót</u> khàp hâj The chauffeur drove for me.
5. kháw	phǒm mâj dâj paj sòn còtmǎaj een I didn't send the letter myself.	<u>kháw</u> sòn hâj He sent it for me.
6. kháw	phǒm mâj dâj khít een I didn't originate the idea myself.	<u>kháw</u> khít hâj He thought of it for me.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Response Drill

Example 1:

- |      |                            |                             |
|------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| T:   | pàakkaa, phŷan             | pen, friend                 |
| S 1: | sýy araj khráp             | What did you buy?           |
| S 2: | sýy <u>pàakkaa</u> khráp   | I bought a pen.             |
| S 1: | sýy hâj khraj khráp        |                             |
| S 2: | sýy hâj <u>phŷan</u> khráp | I bought (it) for a friend. |

Example 2:

- |      |                          |                               |
|------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| T:   | nánsŷy, tua een          | book, oneself                 |
| S 1: | sýy araj khráp           | What did you buy?             |
| S 2: | sýy <u>nánsŷy</u> khráp  | I bought a book.              |
| S 1: | sýy hâj khraj khráp      | Who did you buy it for?       |
| S 2: | sýy àan <u>een</u> khráp | I bought (it) to read myself. |

Continue the drill by having two students form questions and answers like those above using the following cue words:

1. nánsŷy, tua een
2. kaafɛɛ, khruu
3. samùt, tua een
4. aahǎan, phanrajaa
5. khǒɔŋ khwǎn, phŷan
6. rót, tua een



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw aw nánsǎy maa hâj phǒm  
He brought a book to me.
2. kháw khǎan còtmǎaj paj hâj khunmêe kháw  
He wrote a letter to his mother.
3. kháw sǒn còtmǎaj hâj phǒm  
He sent a letter to me.
4. kháw khǎaj rót hâj phǒm  
He bought a car for me.
5. kháw sǒn phaasǎa thaj hâj phǒm  
He taught Thai to me.

### f) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
|                 | (khun) ca hâj <u>kháw khooj máj</u><br>Will you have him wait?               |
| 1. paj kǐi moon | (khun) ca hâj kháw <u>paj kǐi moon</u><br>At what time will you have him go? |
| 2. phǒm         | (khun) ca hâj <u>phǒm</u> paj kǐi moon<br>At what time will you have me go?  |
| 3. tham araj    | (khun) ca hâj phǒm <u>tham araj</u><br>What will you cause me to do?         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. lûuk khun (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun tham araj  
What will you have your children do?
5. rian araj (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj  
What will you have your children study?
6. sýy araj (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun sýy araj  
What will you have your children buy?
7. phǒm (khun) ca hâj phǒm sýy araj.  
What will you have me buy?
8. tham janṇaj (khun) ca hâj phǒm tham janṇaj  
How will you have me do (it)?
9. bòok kháw máj (khun) ca hâj phǒm bòok kháw máj  
Will you have me tell him?
10. khoṛj thfinǎj (khun) ca hâj phǒm khoṛj thfinǎj  
Where will you have me wait?

### g) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw hâj théksǎi khoṛj  
He had the taxi wait.

1. phǒm kháw hâj phǒm khoṛj  
He had me wait.
2. paj sýy khṛṇ kháw hâj phǒm paj sýy khṛṇ  
He let me go shopping.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                      |  |                                  |
|----------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| 3. phák phòn         | kháw hâj phǒm <u>phák</u> <u>phòn</u>                            | He let me take a rest.           |
| 4. mǎo hâj           | <u>mǎo</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm phák phòn                             | The doctor had me take a rest.   |
| 5. thaán jaa         | mǎo hâj phǒm <u>thaán</u> <u>jaa</u>                             | The doctor had me take medicine. |
| 6. jùt thamṇaan      | mǎo hâj phǒm <u>jùt</u> <u>thamṇaan</u>                          | The doctor had me stop working.  |
| 7. naaj phǒm hâj     | <u>naaj</u> <u>phǒm</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm jùt thamṇaan             | My boss had me stop working.     |
| 8. thoo maa hǎa khun | naaj phǒm hâj phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>maa</u> <u>hǎa</u> <u>khun</u> | My boss had me call you.         |

### h) Transformation-Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw phûut kàp khoncháj 'chuâj riâk théksîi hâj khan nyŋ'  He said to a servant 'call a taxi for me'.	kháw hâj khoncháj tham araj  What did he have the servant do?	kháw hâj khoncháj riâk théksîi hâj kháw  He had the servant call a taxi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>2. kháw phûut kàp<br/>khun 'paj hǎa<br/>khun cǝon nǝj'</p> <p>He said to you,<br/>'Go see John'.</p>  | <p>kháw hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p>What did he<br/>have you do?</p>                          | <p>kháw hâj phǝm paj<br/>hǎa khun cǝon</p> <p>He had me go to<br/>see John.</p>                            |
| <p>3. mĕε phûut kàp<br/>lûuk 'nâŋ loŋ'</p> <p>The mother said<br/>to her child,<br/>'Sit down'.</p>  | <p>mĕε hâj lûuk<br/>tham araj</p> <p>What did the<br/>mother have<br/>her child do?</p>         | <p>mĕε hâj lûuk nâŋ<br/>loŋ</p> <p>The mother had<br/>her child sit<br/>down.</p>                          |
| <p>4. khruu phûut kàp<br/>nákrian 'phûut<br/>taam khruu'</p> <p>The teacher said<br/>to the student<br/>'Say after me'.</p>  | <p>khruu hâj nákrian<br/>tham araj</p> <p>What did the<br/>teacher have<br/>the student do?</p> | <p>khruu hâj nákrian<br/>phûut taam khruu</p> <p>The teacher had<br/>the student repeat<br/>after her.</p> |
| <p>5. khun sawàt phûut<br/>kàp khun sǝmsàk<br/>'chuâj sǝŋ náŋsǝy<br/>lĕmnán hâj phǝm<br/>nǝj'.</p> <p>Sawat said to<br/>Somsak 'Please<br/>send me that<br/>book'.</p> | <p>khun sawàt hâj<br/>khun sǝmsàk tham<br/>araj</p> <p>What did Sawat<br/>have Somsak do?</p>   | <p>khun sawàt hâj khun<br/>sǝmsàk sǝŋ náŋsǝy</p> <p>Sawat had Somsak<br/>send him a book.</p>              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw bòok hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He told me to tell you.
2. kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He ordered me to tell you.
3. kháw khǒo hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He requested me to tell you.
4. kháw anújaât hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He allowed me to tell you.

### j) Transformation-Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
(Student 1 to Student 2)	(Teacher)	(Student 2)
1. 'chuâj bòok hâj khun cǒn paj hǎa phǒm nǒj  'Please tell John to come to see me'.	kháw bòok hâj khun tham araj  What did he tell you to do?	kháw bòok hâj phǒm chuâj bòok hâj khun cǒn paj hǎa kháw  He told me to tell John to go to see him.
2. 'paj dǎawní'  Go now.	kháw sàn hâj khun tham araj  What did he order you to do?	kháw sàn hâj phǒm paj dǎawní  He ordered me to go now.

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>3. 'karunaa athíbaaj<br/>nòoj, dâj máj<br/>khráp'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Please explain.</p>                        | <p>kháw khǒo hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>ask you to do?</p>           | <p>kháw khǒo hâj phǒm<br/>athíbaaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me to<br/>explain.</p>   |
| <p>4. 'jyyn jùu thîinîi,<br/>jàa paj nǎj'.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Stand here.<br/>Don't go</p>                         | <p>kháw sàŋ hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>order you to<br/>do?</p>      | <p>kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm<br/>jyyn jùu thîinîi,<br/>mâj hâj phǒm paj nǎj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me to<br/>stand here, not<br/>to go anywhere.</p> |
| <p>5. 'khun khooj phǒm<br/>duâj nakhráp'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Wait for me.</p>                                       | <p>kháw bòok hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he tell<br/>you to do?</p>          | <p>kháw bòok hâj phǒm<br/>khooj kháw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told me to<br/>wait for him.</p>   |
| <p>6. 'karunaa phûut<br/>cháacháa nòoj<br/>dâj máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Could you please<br/>speak slowly.</p> | <p>kháw khǒo hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>request you<br/>to do?</p>   | <p>kháw khǒo hâj phǒm<br/>phûut cháacháa nòoj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me to<br/>speak slowly.</p>   |
| <p>7. 'pèet náŋsýy dâj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">You can open<br/>your book.</p>   | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>khun tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>permit you<br/>to do?</p> | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>phǒm pèet náŋsýy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He permitted<br/>me to open<br/>the book.</p>   |
| <p>8. 'paj dâj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">You may go.</p>   | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>khun tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>let you do?</p>           | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>phǒm paj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He let me go.</p>   |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

k) Transformation Drill (Change pattern 1 to 2 or vice versa.)

### Pattern 1

1. thaanrâatchakaan sàŋ hâj  
phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj

The government ordered  
me to study Thai.

2. kháw anújâat hâj phǒm  
òok kòon weelaa

He permitted me to  
leave before time.

3. kháw bòok hâj khun chuâj  
riâk théksîi hâj kháw

He told you to call  
a taxi for him.

4. kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm khooj  
jùu thiîniî kòon

He ordered me to  
wait here first.

5. kháw anújâat hâj phǒm  
rian phaasǎa thaj (dâj)

He permitted me to  
study Thai.

6. phanrajaa phǒm khǒo hâj  
phǒm paj sýy khǒon hâj  
kháw

My wife asked me to  
go shopping for her.

### Pattern 2

- thaanrâatchakaan hâj phǒm  
rian phaasǎathaj

The government had  
me study Thai.

- kháw hâj phǒm òok kòon  
weelaa

He had me leave before  
time.

- kháw hâj khun chuâj riâk  
théksîi hâj kháw

He had you call a taxi  
for him.

- kháw hâj phǒm khooj jùu  
thiîniî kòon

He had me wait  
here first.

- kháw hâj phǒm rian  
phaasǎa thaj (dâj)

He had me study  
Thai.

- phanrajaa phǒm hâj phǒm  
paj sýy khǒon hâj kháw

My wife had me go  
shopping for her.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>7. kháw sàŋ hâj théksîi<br/>khàp rôt cháacháa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered the taxi<br/>to drive slowly.</p> | <p>kháw hâj théksîi khàp rôt<br/>cháacháa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He had the taxi<br/>drive slowly.</p> |
|--|--|

1) Transformation Drill (Change from direct to indirect statement.)

- | <u>Pattern 1</u> (direct)   | <u>Pattern 2</u> (indirect)   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. kháw bòok phǒm wâa jàa<br/>duu náŋsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He said to me, 'Don't<br/>look at your book.'</p>                                      | <p>kháw bòok <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm<br/>duu náŋsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told me not to<br/>look at my book.</p>  |
| <p>2. kháw sàŋ phǒm wâa jàa<br/>bòok khraj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me, 'Don't<br/>tell anybody.'</p>  | <p>kháw sàŋ <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm<br/>bòok khraj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me not<br/>to tell anybody.</p>   |
| <p>3. khruu bòok nákrían wâa jàa<br/>phûut phaasǎa aŋkrít kan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The teacher said to<br/>the students, 'Don't<br/>speak English.'</p> | <p>khruu bòok <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> nákrían<br/>phûut phaasǎa aŋkrít kan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The teacher told the<br/>students not to speak<br/>English.</p> |
| <p>4. kháw khǒo phǒm wâa jàa<br/>phûut ryâŋnǐ</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He requested me, 'Don't<br/>talk about this subject.'</p>                            | <p>kháw khǒo <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm<br/>phûut ryâŋnǐ</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me not to talk<br/>about this matter.</p>                              |
| <p>5. kháw bòok théksîi wâa jàa<br/>khàprót rew</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He said to the taxi<br/>(driver), 'Don't<br/>drive fast.'</p>                      | <p>kháw bòok <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> théksîi<br/>khàp rôt rew</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told the taxi<br/>(driver) not to<br/>drive fast.</p>                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. kháw bòok phǒm wâa jàa  
sýy khǒon ráannán  
He said to me, 'Don't  
shop in that shop.'

kháw bòok mâj hâj phǒm  
sýy khǒon ráannán  
He told me not to  
shop in that shop.

7. mǎo bòok phǒm wâa jàa  
dýym námkhloon  
The doctor said to  
me, 'Don't drink  
canal water.'

mǎo bòok mâj hâj phǒm  
dýym námkhloon  
The doctor told me  
not to drink canal  
water.

### m) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw sàŋ mâj hâj phǒm  
bòok khraj  
He ordered me not  
to tell anyone.

2. kháw mâj anújâat hâj phǒm  
paj rya  
He didn't permit me  
to go by boat.

3. khruu bòok mâj hâj nákrían  
phûut phaasǎa ankrít kan  
The teacher told the  
students not to speak  
English.

#### Pattern 2

kháw mâj hâj phǒm bòok  
khraj  
He didn't let me  
tell anyone.

kháw mâj hâj phǒm paj rya  
He didn't let me go  
by boat.

khruu mâj hâj nákrían phûut  
phaasǎa ankrít kan  
The teacher didn't  
let the student  
speak English.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. kháw khǎw mâj hâj phǎm<br>phûut ryânní<br>He asked me not to<br>talk about this<br>matter. | kháw <u>mâj hâj</u> phǎm phûut<br>ryânní<br>He didn't let me<br>talk about this<br>matter. |
| 5. kháw <u>bòok mâj hâj</u> phǎm maa<br>He told me not to come.                               | kháw <u>mâj hâj</u> phǎm maa<br>He didn't let me come.                                     |

### n) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
|                            | <u>rót thǎksí</u> hǎa jâak<br>It's hard to find a taxi.                                  |
| 1. ráan nán                | <u>raan nán</u> hǎa jâak<br>It's hard to find that shop.                                 |
| 2. bâan kháw               | <u>bâan kháw</u> hǎa jâak<br>It's hard to find his house.                                |
| 3. nánsǎy lêm ní           | <u>nánsǎy lêm ní</u> hǎa jâak<br>It's hard to find this book.                            |
| 4. khoncháj diidii         | <u>khoncháj diidii</u> hǎa jâak<br>It's hard to find good servants.                      |
| 5. bâan diidii             | <u>bâan diidii</u> hǎa jâak<br>It's hard to find good houses.                            |
| 6. nákrían kèn kèn jàa nni | <u>nákrían kèn kèn jàa nni</u> hǎa jâak<br>Smart students like this<br>are hard to find. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

o) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the question.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. jâak máj	mâj jâak
2. hăa jâak máj	hăa mâj jâak
3. tham jâak máj	tham mâj jâak
4. khĭan jâak máj	khĭan mâj jâak
5. òok sĭan jâak máj	òok sĭan mâj jâak
6. àan jâak máj	àan mâj jâak
7. khâwcaj jâak máj	khâwcaj mâj jâak
8. duu jâak máj	duu mâj jâak
9. phóp jâak máj	phóp mâj jâak
10. dâj jâak máj	dâj mâj jâak
11. cháj jâak máj	cháj mâj jâak
12. khàp jâak máj	khàp mâj jâak
13. rian jâak máj	rian mâj jâak
14. fan jâak máj	fan mâj jâak
15. khăaj jâak máj	khăaj mâj jâak
16. khít jâak máj	khít mâj jâak
17. thăam jâak máj	thăam mâj jâak
18. thaam jâak máj	thaam mâaj jâak
19. cam jâak máj	cam mâj jâak

p) Substitution Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khamthăam khĕon kháw, tòop	khamthăam khĕon kháw tòok jâak máj	tòop mâj jâak { ohá rook kháp
	Is his question hard to answer?	No, it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |                                     |
|---|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2. bĕan khun, hĕa                       | bĕan khun hĕa jĕak mĕj<br>Is your house<br>hard to find?                           | hĕa mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't.   |
| 3. jaa nĕi, thaan                       | jaa nĕi thaan jĕak mĕj<br>Is this medicine<br>hard to take?                        | thaan mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't. |
| 4. aahĕan thaj,<br>tham                 | aahĕan thaj tham<br>jĕak mĕj<br>Is it hard to<br>make Thai food?                   | tham mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't.  |
| 5. kham thaj,<br>sakòt                  | kham thaj sakòt<br>jĕak mĕj<br>Is it hard to<br>drive this car?                    | sakòt mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't. |
| 6. ròt khaannĕi,<br>khàp                | ròt khaannĕi khàp<br>jĕak mĕj<br>Is it hard to<br>drive this car?                  | khàp mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't.  |
| 7. pratuu baan<br>nĕi, pĕt              | pratuu baannĕi pĕt<br>jĕak mĕj<br>Is this door<br>hard to shut?                    | pĕt mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't.   |
| 8. khĕw phĕut<br>phaasĕa ankrĕt,<br>fan | khĕw phĕut phaasĕa<br>ankrĕt fan jĕak mĕj<br>Is his English hard<br>to understand? | fan mĕj jĕak ĕhĕ<br>No, it isn't.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. tua nánsǎy thaj, tua nánsǎy thaj khǎan khǎan mâj jâak əhá  
khǎan jâak máj  
Is it hard to  
write Thai letters? No, it isn't.
10. phûujǎn thaj, phûujǎn thaj rúucàk rúucàk mâj jâak əhá  
rúucàk jâak máj  
Is it hard to  
get to know  
Thai women? No, it isn't.
11. nánsǎy lêm níi, nánsǎy lêm níi àan àan mâj jâak əhá  
àan jâak máj  
Is it hard to  
read this book? No, it isn't.
12. naamsakun naamsakun khonthaj cam mâj jâak əhá  
khonthaj, cam cam jâak máj  
Are Thai names hard  
to remember? No, they aren't.

### q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. <u>weelaa</u> nákrían phûut phít,<br/>khruu khuan ca tham janǎaj<br/>When a student speaks<br/>incorrectly, what<br/>should the teacher do?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> nákrían phûut phít,<br/>khruu khuan ca kĕe<br/>When a student speaks<br/>incorrectly, the teacher<br/>should correct (him).</p> |
| <p>2. <u>weelaa</u> khun mâj khâwcaj,<br/>khun thǎam khraj<br/>When you don't understand,<br/>what do you do?</p>                                     | <p><u>weelaa</u> phǎm mâj khâwcaj,<br/>phǎm thǎam khruu<br/>When I don't understand,<br/>I ask the teacher.</p>                                  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. weelaa khun phóp khonthaj,  
khun phûut phaasǎa araj  
kakháw

When you meet a Thai,  
what language do you  
speak to him?

weelaa phǒm phóp khonthaj,  
phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj  
kakháw

When I meet a Thai,  
I speak Thai to him..

4. weelaa khun mâj sabaaj,  
khun paj hǎa khraj

When you are not well,  
whom do you go to see?

weelaa phǒm mâj sabaaj,  
phǒm paj hǎa mǎo

When I'm not well, I  
go to the doctor's.

5. weelaa khun jùt pháak,  
khun tham araj bâan

When you take a break,  
what do you do?

weelaa phǒm jùt pháak,  
phǒm khuj kàp phýan

When I take a break,  
I talk to friends.

6. weelaa khun tǒop khruu,  
khun khít pen phaasǎa  
araj

When you answer the  
teacher, what language  
do you think in?

weelaa phǒm tǒop khruu,  
phǒm mák ca khít pen  
phaasǎa ankrít kǒon

When I answer the  
teacher, I usually  
think first in English.

### r) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hǎa mǎo	weelaa khun mâj sabaaj, khun tham janraj  When you are not well, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm mâj sabaaj, phǒm mák ca paj <u>hǎa mǎo</u>  When I'm not well, I usually go to the doctor's.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |               |  |   |
|---------------|--|---|
| 2. māj        | weelaa kháw phûut rew<br>rew khun khâwcaj māj<br>When he speaks<br>fast, do you<br>understand.                                   | weelaa kháw phûut rew<br>rew, phǒm <u>māj</u> khâwcaj<br>When he speaks<br>fast, I don't<br>understand.                   |
| 3. àan náŋsǎy | weelaa khun wâaŋ,<br>khun tham araj<br>When you are free,<br>what do you do?   | weelaa phǒm wâaŋ,<br>phǒm <u>àan náŋsǎy</u><br>When I'm not<br>busy, I read.  |
| 4. duu náŋsǎy | weelaa khun ca sòop,<br>khun khuan tham araj<br>When you are going<br>to have a test,<br>what would you do?                      | weelaa phǒm ca sòop<br>phǒm khuan <u>duu náŋsǎy</u><br>When I'm going to<br>have a test, I<br>should study.               |
| 5. aŋkrít     | weelaa khun tòop khruu,<br>khun khít pen phaasǎa<br>araj<br>When you answer<br>the teacher, what<br>language do you<br>think in? | weelaa phǒm tòop khruu,<br>phǒm khít pen phaasǎa<br>aŋkrít<br>When I answer the<br>teacher, I think<br>in English.        |
| 6. kĕe        | weelaa khun phûut phít,<br>khruu khuan ca tham<br>jaŋŋaj<br>When you speak<br>incorrectly,<br>what should the<br>teacher do?     | weelaa phǒm phûut phít,<br>khruu khuan ca <u>kĕe</u><br>When I speak<br>incorrectly,<br>the teacher<br>should correct me. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |                     |   |   |
|----|---------------------|---|---|
| 7. | thǎam khruu         | weelaa khun mâj khâwcaj,<br>khun tham janŋaj<br>When you don't<br>understand, what<br>do you do?  | weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj,<br>phǒm <u>thǎam khruu</u><br>When I don't<br>understand, I<br>ask the teacher.  |
| 8. | paj thaan<br>kaafɛɛ | weelaa khun jùt pháak<br>khun tham araj<br>When you take a<br>break, what do<br>you do?   | weelaa phǒm jùt pháak,<br>phǒm <u>paj thaan kaafɛɛ</u><br>When I take a<br>break I go drink<br>coffee.  |
| 9. | paj chaaj<br>thalee | weelaa aakàat rón,<br>khon ameerikan sùn<br>mâak chǒp paj thĭaw<br>thĭinǎj<br>When the weather's<br>hot, where do most<br>Americans like to<br>go on vacations? | weelaa aakàat rón,<br>khon ameerikan sùn<br>mâak chǒp <u>paj<br/>chaajthalee</u><br>When the weather's<br>hot, most Americans<br>like to go to the<br>seashore. |

### s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |    | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | <u>toon thĭi</u> khun pen dèk, khun<br>rian náŋsŷy thĭinǎj<br>When you were a child,<br>where did you go to<br>school? | <u>toon thĭi</u> phǒm pen dèk, phǒm<br>rian náŋsŷy thĭi tàncaŋwát<br>When I was a child,<br>I studied in the<br>provinces (outside<br>Bangkok). |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. toon thîi kháw maa háa khun,  
khun paj nǎj

When he came to see  
you, where were you  
gone?

- toon thîi kháw maa háa phǒm,  
phǒm paj sýy khǒn khâanǎk

When he came to see  
me, I had gone out  
shopping.

3. toon thîi khun jùu thîi  
prathâet wíatnaam, khun  
mii tamnèsnj araj

When you were stationed  
in Vietnam, what was  
your position (rank)?

- toon thîi phǒm jùu thîi  
prathâet wíatnaam, phǒm  
pen roonj kǒnsǔn

When I was stationed  
in Vietnam, I was  
consul.

4. toon thîi khun rêem rian  
phaasǎa thaj màj màj, khun  
khít wâa phaasǎa thaj jáak  
máj

When you had just  
begun to study Thai,  
did you think it was  
hard?

- toon thîi phǒm rêem rian  
phaasǎathaj màj, phǒm khít  
wâa phaasǎathaj jáak mâak

When I first began  
to study Thai, I  
thought it was very  
hard.

5. toon thîi khun jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, khun rúucàk kháw  
lésw rýjan

Did you meet him  
while you were in  
America?

- toon thîi phǒm jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, phǒm jan màj  
rúucàk kháw

I didn't know him  
when I was in  
America.

6. toon thîi khun jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, khun rian phaasǎa  
thaj thîinǎj

When you were in America,  
where did you study Thai.

- toon thîi phǒm jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, phǒm rian phaasǎa  
thaj thîi roonrian sǒn phaasǎa

When I was in America,  
I studied Thai at a  
language school.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### t) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. raw rian jùu thîi wòochintân	khun rúucàk kháw mýaraj  When were you acquainted with him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw toon thîi <u>raw rian jùu thîi</u> <u>wòochintân</u>  I knew him when we were studying in Washington.
2. khun òok paj khâan nòok	kháw maa mýaraj  When did he come?	kháw maa toon thîi <u>òok paj khâan nòok</u>  He came as you were leaving.
3. tɛɛŋŋaan	khun dâj khǒonkhwǎn lǎaj jàan mýaraj  When did you get a lot of gifts?	phǒm dâj khǒonkhwǎn lǎaj jàan toon thîi <u>phǒm tɛɛŋŋaan</u>  I got a lot of presents when I married.
4. raw mâj jùu	mii khon maa hǎa mýaraj  When did people come to see (us)?	mii khon maa hǎa toon thîi <u>raw mâj jùu</u>  People came to see us while we were not in.
5. phýan phǒm	toon thîi khun mâj sabaaj, khraj tham aahǎan hâj khun  Who cooked for you while you were sick?	<u>phýan phǒm</u> tham aahǎan hâj toon thîi phǒm mâj sabaaj  My friend cooked for me while I was sick.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. thîi lópburii	toon sǎnkhraam lôok khrán thîi 2, khun jùu thîinǎj	phǎm jùu <u>thîi lópburii</u> toon sǎnkhraam lôok khrán thîi sǎn
	Where were you living during World War II?	I was living in Lopburi during World War II.

### u) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. toon thîi phǎm rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thîi éf-és-aj,  
weelaa phǎm phûut phît, khon thaj mák ca kĕe hâj

When I was studying Thai at the FSI, when  
(ever) I made a mistake, a Thai usually  
corrected it.

2. toon thîi raw jan ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa  
paj sýy aahǎan, phǎm paj chûaj phanrajaa samǎe

When we were still living in America, when  
(ever) my wife went to buy food, I always  
helped her.

3. toon thîi raw jùu naj ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa  
phǎm mâj wâan, phǎm chûaj tham aahǎan cháaw hâj kháw

When we were living in America, when (ever)  
my wife was busy, I made breakfast for her.

4. toon thîi phǎm thamnaan krasuan tàan prathêet màj màj  
weelaa kháw chĕen phǎm paj ñaanlían, phǎm paj samǎe

When I had just begun working at the Foreign  
Ministry, when (ever) they invited me to a  
party, I always went.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### v) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw mâj dâj páj khondiaw khrôpkhrua khôṅkháw  
paj duâj  
He didn't go alone. His family went too.
2. wanní phôm ca paj thúra thîi thanaakhaan lé ca  
paj hăa phyan thîinân duâj  
Today I'm going to the bank on business and  
I will see a friend there also.
3. kháw pen khon suăj lé dii duâj  
She is a beautiful person and good too.
4. phôm mâj dâj rian phûut thâwnán tē rian àan lé  
khŷan duâj  
I didn't just learn to speak but to read  
and write also.
5. kháw hâj thékxiŋ paj sòṅ lé hâj khooj kháw duâj  
He had the taxi pick him up and had it  
wait for him too.
6. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan lé nákkaanmyaṅ duâj  
He's a government employee and a politician too.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.3 EXERCISES

- a) Student A asks Student B to call a taxi for him. They discuss destination, where he will stop on the way, how long the driver will have to wait, what the cost will be, and whether the cost is too high or not. When Student B points out that it will be hard to get a taxi at that particular time, Student A says he will call one himself.

NOTE: Use the Basic Dialog as a guide only.

- b) Student A asks Student B whether he does any of the following things for himself or whether he has someone do them for him; and if so, who does them for him.

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. drive a car              | 5. call taxis           |
| 2. go shopping              | 6. make telephone calls |
| 3. bargain                  | 7. other activities     |
| 4. buy food or other things |                         |

- c) Student A asks Student B what he told (ask, let, ordered, requested, wanted) someone to do and if he did it. Use the following exchange as a model:

A: khun bòok (kh๓๐, anújâat, sàŋ) hâj kháw (phŷan khun, etc.) tham araj

B: phǒm bòok (kh๓๐, etc.) hâj kháw kh๑๑j jùu thŷini  
(thaan jaa, thoo maa hăa khun, etc.)

A: (kháw) kh๑๑j (thaan, etc.) rýplàaw khráp

B: plàaw khráp or khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.4 VOCABULARY

anujâat	permit
... (hâj)	
athíbaaj	explain
eeŋ	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence.
òok siǎŋ	to pronounce, to voice
baan	classifier for <u>door</u>
chán	I, me. Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
duâj	too, also
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
jùt	to stop
jùt pháak	to take a break
kêe	to correct
kæen paj	excessively
khâadoojsaan	fare
khamthǎam (khôo)	question
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khon khàprót	chauffeur, driver
khǎo	to request
lòok	world
mâj khôoj (ca)	hardly, rather
mák ca	usually, likely to
nákkaanmyan (khon)	a politician
phák phòn	to rest



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phɛɛŋ	to be expensive
phìt	to be incorrect, a mistake
raakhaa	price
sakòt	to spell (words)
sàŋ (hâj)	to order
sǎŋkhraam	war
sòɔp	to test, be tested
taam	to follow, after, along
tamnɛɛŋ	position (rank)
tòɔ (raakhaa)	to bargain
tòɔ (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

#### 28.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation With a Taxi Driver

David:	théksíi.	Taxi!
khon khàp théksíi:	paj nǎj khráp	Where to?
(Taxi driver)		
David:	paj pratunám, aw thâwràj	How much to Pratnam?
khon khàp:	sìp sǒŋ bàat khráp	Twelve baht.
David:	cèt bàat, dâj máj	How about seven?
khon khàp:	klâj khêsníi eej	It's right near here.
khon khàp:	mâj wǎj rǒkhráp	Can't do it.
	thěwnán rót tìt	The traffic's heavy over there.
David:	nán, pèet bàat, paj máj	Then, can you do it for eight?
	khəej paj dâj pèet bàat	I've been for eight (before).
khon khàp:	kâaw bàat kôléwkan, paj máj	Let's say nine baht. Do you want to go?
David:	paj kô paj	If we're going, let's go.
	chúaj khàp cháa cháa	Please drive slowly.
	nòoj nakhráp	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(théksîi khàp rew mâak. (The taxi goes very fast,  
khun deewít læej phûut wâa '...!') so David says, '....!')

David: khun khráp, jàa khàp Say, don't drive so fast.  
rew nák sikhráp

karunaa khàp cháa Could you please slow  
cháa nòoj, dâj máj down a little?  
khráp

### 28.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) In affirmative requests stative verbs (di, cháa, etc.) usually occur in reduplicated form when used as modifiers of other verbs.

phûut cháa cháa nòoj nakhráp 'Speak a little slower.'

nòoj 'a little' usually occurs after the stative verb and serves to soften the request.

In negative requests the stative verb is not usually reduplicated.

jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp 'Don't speak so fast.'

nák 'so, so much' may occur after the stative verb.

- b) In the construction jùu klâj klâj khêe nîi een, een is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance.

- c) ròk is also pronounced ròk, ròok, ròk, rò, when followed by khráp or khâ or ə when followed by há. It is used with statements of negation, or contradiction, or when correcting a misapprehension. It makes a statement milder or less abrupt.

mâj wăj ròkhráp 'I can't do it.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) ná or na with kháp at the end of a sentence indicates that a comment is being made and attention is being called to it. No response to it is necessary, but if one is made, it is kháp.

A: khòokkhun mâak ná                    'Thanks very much.'  
B: kháp                                        (I heard you.)

Request = khàp diidii    { ná                    'Drive well.'  
                                  { nakhráp

- e) Notice the difference in usage between sí, si, and sí, sí is used to request some one to do something. If it is to be done for the speaker, nòj or thii may be used to soften the request.

khàp cháacháa nòj sí (or sikhráp)    'Slow down a bit.'

If the speaker is urging someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request, or urging someone to do something that obviously needs doing, he may use sí.

khàp cháacháa (nòj) sí                    'Slow down (as I asked you to)'

- f) kô léew kan is a phrase which is used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it. English equivalents vary from example to example:

kâaw bàat kô léew kan                    'Let's say nine baht.'

waanníi khun khàprót kô                    'How about you driving today!?'  
léew kan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 28.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	paj <u>pratuunám</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Pratunam?
1. sǐijêek râatprasǎn	paj <u>sǐijêek râatprasǎn</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Ratprasong Corner?
2. roonǎn khiŋ	paj <u>roonǎn khiŋ</u> , aw thâwràj How much to King's Cinema?
3. phi éks	paj <u>phiéks</u> , aw thâwràj How much to the P. X.?
4. thammasàat	paj <u>thammasàat</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Thammasart (University)?
5. juusít, thanǎn sǎathǎontâj	paj <u>juusít thanǎn sǎathǎon tâj</u> , aw thâwràj How much to USIS on South Sathorn?
6. roonphajaabaan mítchân	paj <u>roonphajaabaan mítchân</u> , aw thâwràj How much to the Mission Hospital?
7. roonrɛɛm khéppitôn saphaan khwaaaj	paj <u>roonrɛɛm khéppitôn saphaan khwaaaj</u> , aw thâwràj
8. pathumwan	paj <u>pathumwan</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Patoomwan Corner?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. phûut , cháa	phûut <u>cháacháa</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little slower.
2. khàp , cháa	khàp <u>cháacháa</u> nòoj nakhráp Drive a little slower.
3. klàp maa , rew	klàp maa <u>rewrew</u> nòoj nakhráp Come back a little sooner.
4. thaan , mâak	thaan <u>mâakmâak</u> nòoj nakhráp Eat a little more.
5. jùu , naan	jùu <u>naannaan</u> nòoj nakhráp Stay a while longer.
6. tham (aahǎan), mâak	tham <u>mâakmâak</u> nòoj nakhráp Do a bit more.
7. phûut , dan	phûut <u>dandan</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little louder.
8. phûut kàp kháw , dii	phûut kàp kháw <u>dii dii</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little better with him.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp  
Don't drive so fast.
2. jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp  
Don't speak so fast.
3. jàa phûut khôj nák nakhráp  
Don't speak so softly.
4. jaà dœen cháa nák nakhráp  
Don't walk so slowly.
5. jàa maa cháa nák nakhráp  
Don't come so late.
6. jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp  
Don't come so late (in the morning).
7. jàa paj naan nák nakhráp  
Don't be gone for so long.

### e) Transformation Drill

- | <u>Affirmative</u>                                       | <u>Negative</u>                                  |
|--|--|
| 1. khàp cháacháa nòoj nakhráp<br>Drive a little slower.  | jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp<br>Don't drive so fast. |
| 2. maa cháawcháaw nòoj nakhráp<br>Come a little earlier. | jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp<br>Don't come so late.  |



**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>3. paj rewrew nòoj nakhráp<br/>Go a little faster.</p>         | <p>jàa paj cháa nák nakhráp<br/>Don't go so slow.</p>         |
| <p>4. phûut khôjkhôj nòoj nakhráp<br/>Speak a little softer.</p>  | <p>jàa phûut daŋ nák nakhráp<br/>Don't speak so loud.</p>     |
| <p>5. klàp rewrew nòoj nakhráp<br/>Come back a little sooner.</p> | <p>jàa klàp cháa nák nakhráp<br/>Don't come back so late.</p> |
| <p>6. maa cháawcháaw nòoj nakhráp<br/>Come a little earlier.</p>  | <p>jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp<br/>Don't come so late.</p>       |

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |    |          |   |            |                                  |
|----|----------|---|------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. | sǎaj caŋ | } | ná<br>nahá | Very pretty, isn't it?           |
| 2. | sǎaj     | } | ná<br>nahá | Pretty, isn't it?                |
| 3. | kèŋ caŋ  | } | ná<br>nahá | Very expert, isn't it?           |
| 4. | dii      | } | ná<br>nahá | Good, isn't it?                  |
| 5. | chát caŋ | } | ná<br>nahá | Very clear (distinct), isn't it? |
| 6. | phæŋ     | } | ná<br>nahá | Expensive, isn't it?             |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |          |                   |                                     |
|-----|----------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 7.  | naan caŋ | } ná<br>} nahá    | A very long time, isn't it?         |
| 8.  | cháa caŋ | } ná<br>} nahá    | Very slow, isn't it?                |
| 9.  | rew caŋ  | } ná<br>} nakhráp | Very fast (quick), isn't it?        |
| 10. | klaj caŋ | } ná<br>} nahá    | Very far, isn't it?                 |
| 11. | mâak     | } ná<br>} nahá    | (It's) a lot, isn't it?             |
| 12. | mâak caŋ | ná<br>nahá        | (It's) a very great deal, isn't it? |

### g) Transformation Drill

From the situation given in Column 1, one student makes a comment (as a reaction to the situation) to another student.

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Comment</u>
1. faràŋ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj cháat mâak That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly.	faràŋ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj cháat caŋ ná That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly, doesn't he?
2. kháw pen khon nâabyà He's a bore.	kháw pen khon nâabyà ná He's a bore, isn't he?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. phûujǐŋ khonní sǔaj mâak<br>That woman is very<br>pretty.                           | phûujǐŋ khonní sǔaj caŋ ná<br>That woman is very<br>pretty, isn't she?                               |
| 4. phaasǎa thaj nǐi jâak<br>Thai is hard.  | phaasǎa thaj nǐi jâak ná<br>Thai is hard, isn't it?  |
| 5. phyân khun pen khon sanùk<br>Your friend is an<br>amusing person.                   | phyân khun pen khon sanùk ná<br>Your friend is an<br>amusing person,<br>isn't he?                    |
| 6. phûuchaaj khonnán lēn thennít<br>kēŋ mâak<br>That fellow plays<br>tennis very well. | phûuchaaj khonnán lēn thennít<br>kēŋ caŋ ná<br>That fellow plays<br>tennis very well,<br>doesn't he? |
| 7. mǔo khonnán dii mâak<br>That doctor is very<br>good.                                | mǔo khonnán dii caŋ ná<br>That doctor is very<br>good, isn't he?                                     |
| 8. bâan khun praphâat jùu<br>klaj mâak<br>Mr. Prapas' house is<br>very far.            | bâan khun praphâat jùu klaj<br>caŋ<br>Mr. Prapas' house is<br>very far, isn't it?                    |
| 9. wanní aakàat dii<br>Today the weather's<br>fine.                                    | wanní aakàat dii ná<br>Today the weather's<br>fine, isn't it?  |
| 10. thǐnǐi khǒŋ phœŋ mâak<br>Here things are<br>very expensive.                        | thǐnǐi khǒŋ phœŋ caŋ ná<br>Here things are<br>very expensive,<br>aren't they?                        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

11. thěwníi rót tít mâak

The traffic is very  
heavy in this section.

thěwníi rót tít caṅ ná

The traffic is very heavy  
in this section, isn't it?

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp

Slow down a bit.

2. maa cháacháaw nòoj sikhráp

Come a little earlier.

3. phûut dandaj nòoj sikhráp

Speak a little louder.

4. paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp

Go a little faster.

5. duu nâṅsŷy mâakmâak nòoj sikhráp

Study a little more.

### i) Transformation Drill

#### Situation

(khun khàp rót rew)

(khun maa sǎaj thúkwan)

(khun phûut khôj mâak)

#### Request

khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp

Drive a little slower.

maa cháawcháaw nòoj sikhráp

Come a bit earlier.

phûut dandaj nòoj sikhráp

Speak a little louder.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(khun paj cháa mâak)

paj rewrew nòj sikhráp  
Go a little earlier.

(khun thamnaan cháa)

tham rewrew nòj sikhráp  
Work a little faster.

(khun thaan nòj)

thaan mâak mâak nòj sikhráp  
Eat a little more.

(khun phûut mâj dii)

phûut dii dii nòj sikhráp  
Speak a little better.

### j) Transformation Drill

#### Affirmative Request

1. khàp cháacháa nòj sikhráp  
Drive slower.
2. maa cháawcháaw nòj sikhráp  
Come earlier.
3. paj rewrew nòj sikhráp  
Go sooner.
4. khuj kan khôj khôj nòj sikhráp  
Converse more quietly.
5. thamnaan rewrew nòj sikhráp  
Work faster.

#### Negative Request

- jàa khàp rew nák sikhráp  
Don't drive so fast.
- jàa maa sǎaj nák sikhráp  
Don't come so late.
- jàa paj cháa nák sikhráp  
Don't go so late.
- jàa khuj kan dan nák sikhráp  
Don't converse in such  
loud voices.
- jàa tham cháa nák sikhráp  
Don't work so slowly.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Transformation Drill

Change Pattern 1 to 2 with na, which has the meaning: 'a reminder to...!'; change Pattern 1 to 3 with si, which has the meaning 'you are urged to...!'.  
Change Pattern 1 to 2 with na, which has the meaning: 'a reminder to...!'; change Pattern 1 to 3 with si, which has the meaning 'you are urged to...!'.

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. paj	paj nakhráp	paj sikhráp
2. maa	maa nakhráp	maa sikhráp
3. phûut	phûut nakhráp	phûut sikhráp
4. tòop	tòop nakhráp	tòop sikhráp
5. paj rewrew	paj rewrew nakhráp	paj rewrew sikhráp
6. phûut phaasăathaj	phûut phaasăathaj nakhráp	phûut phaasăathaj sikhráp
7. jàa phûut phaasăa aᅇkrít	jàa phûut phaasăa aᅇkrít nakhráp	jàa phûut phaasăa aᅇkrít sikhráp

### 28.3 EXERCISES (The instructor reads the sentences describing the situation and a student makes an appropriate response.)

1. khun kamləŋ ca khŷn théksŷi . khun māj jàak hāj théksŷi kàp rót rew . khun phûut wāa '.....'.
2. khun kamləŋ nāŋ théksŷi . khonkhàp khàp rew māk . khun māj jàak hāj kháw khàp rew.khun phûut wāa '.....'.
3. nákrían phûut sŷəŋ khŷj kəən paj.khun jàak hāj kháw phûut daŋdaŋ . khun phûut wāa '.....'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. phrûṅnīi khun ca paj thīaw kàp phyân tēs cháaw . kháw ca tōṅ maa phóp khun thīi bāan . khun jàak hâj kháw maa cháaw cháaw . khun phûut wāa '.....'.
5. khun cim chuan phyân khuj samǎe. khun mâj jàak hâj khun cim chuan phyân khuj . khun phûut wāa '.....'.
6. khun coo hěn phûujǎn khon nỳn . kháw suǎj mâak . khun coo phûut kàp phyân wāa '.....'.
7. khun coon khít wāa wanníi aakàat dii mâak . khun coon phûut kàp phyân wāa '.....'.
8. khruu jàak hâj nákrīan phûut phaasǎa thaj . khruu phûut wāa '.....'.
9. nákrīan kamlan phûut phaasǎa ankrít kan . khruu jàak hâj kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj kan . khruu phûut wāa '.....'.

### 28.4 VOCABULARY

anúsǎawariī (hèn)	monument
eeṅ	is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance (in this lesson).
coo	Joe
daṅ	loud
khēs { níi nán	up to (such and such a point) that near (far), to that extent
khéppitôn	Capitol, name of a hotel in Bangkok
khôj	softly, low (of sound)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kô léew kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
máj wǎj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)
mítchân	Mission, name of a hospital in Bangkok
nák	so, so much
pathumwan	a section in Bangkok
prachaathíppataj	freedom and also the name of a monument in Bangkok
roonǎn khin	King's Cinema
rót tít	the traffic's heavy
tít	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
saphaan khwaaj	Buffalo Bridge, name of the section in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road
si, sí, sí	to request someone to do something to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
thěwnán	over there, that area
thii	may be used in the place of <u>nòoj</u> to soften the request if it is to be done for the speaker.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-NINE

29.0 BASIC DIALOG: paj hăa araj thaan khâanŋōk  
'Going Out to Eat.'

- A: phǒm ca paj hăa araj thaan khâanŋōk . paj dūajkan máj  
I'm going to go out for something to eat. Want to go along?
- B: paj  
Yes.  
khun chuan khraj paj dūaj rýplàaw  
Did you ask anybody(else) to go along?
- A: mâj dâj chuan khraj phró  
No, I didn't invite anybody because nobody was in.  
mâj mi khraj jùu
- B: khun sǒmsŷi lâ  
How about Somsri?
- A: mâj maa  
She didn't come.  
pùaj  
She's sick.
- B: nán, thaen sèt léew  
Then, after we have eaten,  
thâa raw mi weelaa phoo  
if we have time,  
paj jŷam kháw sàk nòoj  
let's go visit her for a while,
- A: dii máj  
O.K.?
- B: awsi khráp  
Good idea!  
nán, raw rŷip paj kan thè  
Then let's hurry or  
dŷaw ca klàp maa mâj than  
we won't get back on time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 29.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND OTHER NOTES

a) aw máj means 'Will you accept?' or 'Is it acceptable?' It is often used after sentences in which a proposal is made. The response to it is mâj aw khráp 'I won't (accept it)' or 'It isn't (acceptable)', or awsí khráp 'O.K.' or 'I'll accept (it)'. aw máj is similar in usage and meaning to dii máj in this particular sense.

b) As indicated in 11.16, khraj and araj are not always used as question words. They may also be used as indefinite pronouns:

(1) in questions with máj, rǎy, or rýplàaw, or

(2) as the object complement of certain verbs in affirmative and negative sentences, as below:

<u>mii khraj maa bâan máj</u>	'Is anyone coming.'
<u>mâj mii khraj maa</u>	'Nobody's coming.'
<u>khraj khraj kô bòok wâa</u>	'Everybody says Bangkok's
<u>krunthêep mâj sǎaj</u>	not pretty.'

Although both khraj and khon occur with indefinite meaning as object complements of the verb mii, they can not be used interchangeably. The difference in usage is illustrated below:

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Utterance</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
1. Mr. <u>A</u> had a house for sale, so he put an ad in the paper with his telephone number.	<u>A</u> to his secretary: <u>mii khon thoo maa</u> <u>bâan rýplàaw</u>	Did I get any calls (about that ad)?
2. Mr. <u>A</u> is expecting a call from some friends about a trip to Pataya.	<u>A</u> to his wife: <u>mii khraj thoo maa</u> <u>bâan rýplàaw</u>	Did anyone (of my friends) call?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

The usage in negative sentence is illustrated below:

1. There are several newly built houses on a street.      mâj mii khon jùu      'Nobody's living in those houses.'
2. Some one knocks on a door but gets no response.      mâj mii khraj jùu      'Nobody's home.'

### 29.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sèt, and than are called completive verbs. They occur in the structure SENTENCE + COMPLETIVE VERB.

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamnaan sèt léew      'He has finished working.'

kháw jan tham mâj sèt      'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. than means 'to accomplish something in time, to have time to', or 'to catch up to.'

phǒm maa roonrian mâj than      'I didn't come to school on time'.

3. After action verbs (paj, thaan, etc.) the question word mâj indicates that a voluntary choice is possible, hence it is used in invitations, suggestions, etc. (See 9.1)

raw paj sýy khǒn.      'We are going shopping.'

paj dûajkan mâj      'Want to go along?'

Responses to questions of this type may be:

Affirmative: paj sihá      'I would like to'  
(ready acceptance)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Negative: mâj əhá 'Thanks, no.'  
khòəpkhun (polite refusal)

b) rýplàaw is used with action verbs to indicate 'past time'.

pa.j rýplàaw 'Did you go?'

pa.j khráp 'I did.'

There are two possible negative responses to this type of question: mâj dâj (pa.j) and mâj (pa.j). Choice of the mâj dâj form of the negative indicates that circumstances prevented the speaker from doing something. Choice of the mâj form indicates that the speaker did not do something out of choice. Observe the examples below:

mýawaanní khun pa.j ɲaanlían rýplàaw

'Did you go to the party yesterday?'

phǒm mâj dâj pa.j khráp (phró phǒm mâj wâən)

'I didn't go (because I was busy.)'

phǒm mâj pa.j khráp (phró phǒm mâj jàak pa.j).

'I didn't go (because I didn't want to go.)'

c) thè (thə, thət) 'why not, let's' is a sentence particle. It is used in making mild suggestions. When joint activity is called for, it occurs after kan.

raw pa.j kin khâaw kan thèkhráp 'Let's go eat.'

d) dýaw may occur as a sentence connective, with the meaning 'or else, otherwise'. In the examples below it is used to indicate that one event follows as the logical consequence of another.

raw rîip pa.j kan thèkhráp, dýaw ca klàp maa mâj than

'Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't get back in time.'

jàa cháa nák nakhráp, dýaw ɲaan ca mâj sèt

'Don't be so slow, or else the work won't be finished.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 29.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

(phǒm) ca paj hǎa araj thaan, paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to get something to eat. Want to come along?

1. thaán khâaw      ca paj thaan khâaw. paj duâjkan máj khráp  
I'm going to eat. Want to come along?
2. sýy khǒŋ      ca paj sýy khǒŋ. pâj duâjkan máj khráp  
I'm going to eat. Want to come along?  
shopping?
3. sòn còtmǎaj      ca paj sòn còtmǎaj. paj dūajkan máj khráp  
I'm going to mail a letter. Want to come  
along?
4. thaán kaafɛɛ      ca paj thaan kaafɛɛ paj duâjkan máj khráp  
I'm going to drink coffee. Want to come  
along.
5. duu nǎŋ      ca paj duu nǎŋ paj duâjkan máj khráp  
I'm going to a movie. Want to come along?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>		
	<u>No</u>	<u>Yes</u> (Reluctant acceptance)	<u>Yes</u> (Willing acceptance)
1. ca paj hǎa araj thaان paj duâjkan máj	mâj ehá khòpkhun	paj kô paj paj kô paj	paj sihá paj sihá
2. paj thaان kaafɛ kan máj	mâj ehá khòpkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá
3. paj duu nǎŋ kan máj	mâj ehá khòpkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá
4. paj máj	mâj ehá khòpkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá

### c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes	thaان máj  Do you want to eat?	khòpkhun { khráp { há?  Yes, thank you.
2. No	thaان máj  Do you want to eat?	mâj ehá, khòpkhun  No, thank you.
3. Yes	dÿym máj  Do you want something to drink?	khòpkhun há  Yes, thank you.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                    |  |                                      |
|-----|--------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 4.  | No.                | kaafɛɛ máj<br>Do you want some coffee?   | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 5.  | No.                | aw máj<br>Would you $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{like some?} \\ \text{accept any offer?} \end{array} \right.$ | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 6.  | Yes<br>(reluctant) | paj máj<br>Would you like to go?   | paj kô paj<br>Well, O.K.             |
| 7.  | Yes.               | duu máj<br>Do you want to look?  | khòɔpkhun há<br>Yes, thank you.      |
| 8.  | No.                | aàn máj<br>Do you want to read (it)?   | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 9.  | No.                | thaan dûajkan máj<br>Would you like to eat together?   | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 10. | No.                | pâj dûajkan máj<br>Do you want to go along?  | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	sýy Yes.
2. No.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	mâj sýy No.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                       |  |                                |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 3. Yes                | duu máj<br>Want to look?   | duu<br>Yes.                    |
| 4. No                 | aw máj<br>Would you like some?<br>Will you accept my offer?  | mâj aw<br>No.                  |
| 5. No                 | maa máj<br>Would you like to come?   | mâj maa<br>No.                 |
| 6. Yes                | paj máj<br>Would you like to go?   | paj<br>Yes.                    |
| 7. Yes<br>(reluctant) | khǎaj máj<br>Would you like to sell (it)?  | khǎaj kô khǎaj<br>Well, maybe. |
| 8. No                 | rót khanní ca khǎaj máj<br>Will you sell this car?   | mâj khǎaj<br>No.               |
| 9. No                 | phrûnní ca paj ñaan máj<br>Are you going to the affair<br>tomorrow?                                  | mâj paj<br>No.                 |
| 10. Yes               | kháw ca háj khun paj<br>tàncañwát, aw máj<br>They want you to go to the<br>provinces, are you going? | aw<br>Yes.                     |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u> (Past action)	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes	thaan rýplàaw Did you eat?	thaan Yes, I did.
2. No	dýym rýplàaw Did you have anything	mâj dâj dýym No, I didn't.
3. No	paj rýplàaw Did you go?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
4. Yes	sýy rýplàaw Did you buy (it)?	sýy Yes, I did.
5. No	khǎaj rýplàaw Did you sell (it)?	mâj dâj khǎaj No, I didn't.
6. No	duu rýplàaw Did you look (at it)?	mâj dâj duu No, I didn't.
7. Yes	àan rýplàaw Did you read (it)?	àan Yes, I did.
8. No	aw rýplàaw Did you take it?	mâj dâj aw No, I didn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. m̄yawaann̄i, kháw paj naanl̄ian r̄yplàaw khráp Did he go to the party yesterday?	kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>paj</u> khráp (phró kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>jàak</u> paj). He didn't go because he didn't want to.
2. m̄yawaann̄i, khun paj naanl̄ian r̄yplàaw khráp Did you go to the party yesterday?	phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>d̄aj</u> <u>paj</u> khráp phró phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>w̄an</u> I didn't go because I was busy.
3. m̄yakhyynn̄i, ph̄yan khun thaان aah̄an thaj r̄yplàaw. Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>thaan</u> khráp (phró kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>ch̄oap</u> aah̄an thaj) He didn't because he doesn't like Thai food.
4. m̄yakhyynn̄i, ph̄yan khun thaان aah̄an thaj r̄yplàaw Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>d̄aj</u> <u>thaan</u> khráp phró aah̄an mòt He didn't because it was all eaten up.
5. khun s̄y n̄ans̄y r̄yplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>d̄aj</u> <u>s̄y</u> khráp phró <u>m̄aj</u> <u>mi</u> <u>n̄en</u> I didn't because I didn't have any money.
6. khun s̄y n̄ans̄y r̄yplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm khít w̄a phǒm ca <u>m̄aj</u> <u>s̄y</u> khráp phró phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>ch̄oap</u> n̄ans̄y l̄em n̄i I thought I wouldn't buy it because I didn't like this book.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thŷŋ weelaa pháak léew, pháak thèkhráp  
It's break time. Take a break.
2. khâaŋnaj mii kâwŋi, (raw) paj nâŋ thŷinân kan thèkhráp  
There are chairs inside. Let's go sit there.
3. thŷaŋ léew, paj thaan khâaw kan thèkhráp  
It's noon already. Let's go eat.
4. paj kan thèkhráp  
Let's go.
5. wannŷi raw phŷut. phaasăa thaj kan thèkhráp  
Today let's speak Thai.
6. kháw cháa kœen paj. raw thaan kan thèkhráp  
He's too late. Let's go ahead and eat.

### h) Transformation Drill (Reword the sentences using chuan.)

1. Teacher: kháw phŷut kàp phŷm 'wansăwnŷi paj  
phátthajaa kan máj khráp'  
He said to me, 'Would you like to go  
to Pataya (with us) next Saturday?'  
Student: kháw chuan phŷm paj phátthajaa.  
He invited me to go to Pataya.
2. Teacher: kháw phŷut kàp phŷm 'wannŷi raw phŷut  
phaasăa thaj kan thè'  
He said to me, 'Let's speak Thai today.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Student: kháw chuan phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj

He invited me to speak Thai (with him).

1. khun cǝon phûut kàp phǒm 'jenníi raw paj hǎa  
aahǎan thaj thaan kan máj khráp
2. phýan khun phûut kàp phǒm 'phrýnǎi , paj lén  
thennít kan máj khráp
3. mýawaanníi phanrajaa phǒm phûut kàp phǒm 'paj duu  
nǎŋ kan thè (raw paj duu nǎŋ kan)
4. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phrûnǎi kháw ca mii kaanbanjaa  
rýan myan thaj . paj fan dũajkan máj khráp'
5. kháw phûut kàp phǒm wǎa dýym kaafɛɛ máj khráp
6. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wanníi , thaan khǎaw kàp phǒm  
na khráp
7. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phǒm jàak hǎj khun paj thamŋaan  
kàp phǒm

### i) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| 1. phǒm | <u>phǒm</u> thamŋaan sèt léɛw<br>I've finished working. |
| 2. raw  | <u>raw</u> thamŋaan sèt léɛw<br>We've finished working. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

14. sòn còtmǎaj                      phǒm sòn còtmǎaj sèt léew  
I've finished mailing the letter.
15. tham thúra                      phǒm tham thúra sèt léew  
I've finished my business.

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (sèt as main verb.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. naan khǒn khun sèt máj khráp Is your work finished?	naan khǒn phǒm sèt léew khráp My work is finished.
2. naan khǒn phyan khun sèt máj khráp Is your friend's work finished?	naan khǒn phyan phǒm jan mâj sèt khráp My friend's work isn't finished.
3. rūup khǒn khun sèt máj khráp Is your picture finished?	rūup khǒn phǒm sèt léew khráp My picture is finished.
4. bāan khǒn khun sèt léew rýjan khráp Is your house finished yet?	bāan khǒn phǒm jan mâj sèt khráp My house isn't finished yet.
5. nǎnsýy khǒn khun sèt léew rýjan khráp Is your book finished yet?	nǎnsýy khǒn phǒm sèt léew khráp My book is finished already.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

k) Transformation Drill (Listen to the affirmative sentence and add a negative sentence with tè kháw jaŋ mâj sèt.)

### Pattern 1

### Pattern 2

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>phǒm</u> thamŋaan sèt lésw<br>I've finished working.              | tè <u>kháw</u> jaŋ tham <u>mâj</u> sèt<br>but he hasn't yet. |
| 2. <u>phǒm</u> thaan khâaw sèt lésw<br>I've finished eating             | tè kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sèt<br>but he hasn't yet.              |
| 3. <u>phǒm</u> rian náŋsǎy sèt lésw<br>I've finished studying           | tè kháw jaŋ rian mâj sèt<br>but he hasn't yet.               |
| 4. <u>phǒm</u> phûut thoorasàp sèt lésw<br>I've finished telephoning    | tè kháw phûut mâj sèt<br>but he hasn't yet.                  |
| 5. <u>phǒm</u> lèn thenníis sèt lésw<br>I've finished playing tennis    | tè kháw jaŋ lèn mâj sèt<br>but he hasn't yet.                |
| 6. <u>phǒm</u> sòop sèt lésw<br>I've finished my exams                  | tè kháw jaŋ sòop mâj sèt<br>but he hasn't yet.               |
| 7. <u>phǒm</u> sýy khǒŋ sèt lésw<br>I've finished shopping              | tè kháw jaŋ sýy mâj sèt<br>but he hasn't yet.                |
| 8. <u>phǒm</u> tham thúra sèt lésw<br>I've finished my business         | tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt<br>but he isn't finished yet.       |
| 9. <u>phǒm</u> khǎan còtmăaj sèt lésw<br>I've finished writing a letter | tè kháw jaŋ khǎan mâj sèt<br>but he isn't finished yet.      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>10. phǒm thaan kaafɛɛ sèt léɛw<br/>I've finished drinking coffee</p> | <p>tè kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sèt<br/>but he hasn't yet.</p> |
| <p>11. phǒm tham aahǎan sèt léɛw<br/>I've finishing cooking</p>         | <p>tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt<br/>but she hasn't yet.</p> |

### 1) Expansion Drill

<u>Example 1:</u>	phoo máj	Is it enough?
	weelaa phoo máj	Is the time sufficient?
	mii weelaa phoo máj	Is there sufficient time?
	raw mii weelaa phoo máj	Do we have enough time?

<u>Example 2:</u>	phoo máj	Is it enough?
	aahǎan phoo máj	Is the food sufficient?
	mii aahǎan phoo máj	Is there sufficient food?
	raw mii aahǎan phoo máj	Do we have enough food?

Continue the drill by having the teacher provide cue words which the student incorporates in the sentences given:

<u>Teacher</u>	<u>Students</u>
<p>1. phoo máj khruu mii raw</p>	<p>phoo máj khruu phoo máj mii khruu phoo máj raw mii khruu phoo máj</p>
<p>2. phoo máj náŋsǎy mii khun</p>	<p>phoo máj náŋsǎy phoo máj mii náŋsǎy phoo máj khun mii náŋsǎy phoo máj</p>











## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phǒm paj thamnaan mâj than

The office opens at 8:30 a.m.  
I got there at 9:00.  
I didn't get to work on time.

4. raw than aahǎan klaanwan sèt weelaa bàaj sǒŋ moon  
kwàa.roonrian khâw weelaa bàaj sǒŋ moon tron.

raw klàp maa rian mâj than

We finished eating lunch after 2:00 a.m.  
School starts at 2:00 p.m. sharp.  
We didn't return to class on time.

5. weelaa sǒŋ naathii. phǒm tǒŋ khít khamtòp sǎam  
naathii.

phǒm khít (khamtòp) mâj than

phǒm tòp mâj than

The time (provided) was 2 minutes.  
It took me 3 minutes to think of an answer.  
I didn't think of the answer in time. (or)  
I didn't answer in time.

6. kháw phûut rew kǎen paj. phǒm fan mâj than

He speaks too fast.  
I can't catch it.

7. phǒm ca bòk kháw té kháw paj lésw. phǒm bòk  
kháw mâj than

I was going to tell him, but he had already gone.  
I wasn't in time to tell him.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Transformation Drill

T: roonrian khâw weelaa sǎam moon cháaw  
School starts at 9:00 a.m.

phǒm maa thǎy roonrian weelaa sǎam moon khrȳn  
I got to school at 9:30 a.m.

Cue words: maa roonrian get to school

S: khun maa roonrian mâj than  
You didn't get to school on time.

1. thǐi thamnaan khǒn phǒm khâw weelaa sǒn moon cháaw  
mýacháawníi phǒm paj thǎy thǐithamnaan weelaa sǎam  
moon cháaw

Cue words: mýacháawníi, paj thamnaan

2. kháw rêem phûut weelaa nyn thûm. phǒm paj thǎy  
thǐinân weelaa thûm sǐisǐp hâa

Cue words: paj fan kháw phûut

3. kháw hâj weelaa phǒm tǒp sǒn naathii. phǒm cháj  
weelaa tham sǎam naathii

Cue word: tǒp

4. phǒm ca bǒk kháw tè kháw paj léew

Cue word: tǒp

5. rótmee òk càak pâaj weelaa thǐan sǐp naathii.  
phǒm paj thǎy pâaj rótmee weelaa thǐan sǐp hâa naathii

Cue words: paj khýn rótmee.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phǒm paj ráp kháw weelaa sǒn thûm. kháw òok càak  
bâan weelaa nỳn thûm

Cue words: paj ráp kháw

7. ráankhǎajkhǒn pít weelaa hòk moon jen. phǒm paj  
thỳn thîi ráan weelaa nỳn thûm.

Cue words: paj sýy khǒn

r) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2  
using dǎaw as the sentence  
connective.)

1. raw rîip paj kan the khráp,  
raw ca klàp maa mâj than

raw rîip paj kan the khráp,  
dǎaw ca klàp maa mâj than.

Let's hurry, otherwise we  
won't get back in time.

2. fǒn kamlan tòk  
jàa òok paj khâanòok,  
khun ca mâj sabaaj

fǒn kamlan tòk, jàa òok paj  
khâanòok, dǎaw ca mâj sabaaj

It's raining. Don't go  
outside, or you'll get  
sick.

3. rîip paj kan thekhráp,  
raw ca mâj mii weelaa thaan  
aahǎan klaanwan

rîip paj kan thekhráp,  
dǎaw ca mâj mii weelaa thaan  
aahǎan klaanwan

Let's hurry; otherwise, we  
won't have time to eat lunch.

4. jàa cháa nák nakhráp,  
khun ca paj mâj than

jàa cháa nák nakhráp,  
dǎaw ca paj mâj than

Don't be so slow; otherwise,  
you won't get there in time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. jàa phûut phaasǎa aᅇkrít  
kan sikhráp  
khun ca lyyᅇm phaasǎa thaj
- jàa phûut phaasǎa aᅇkrít kan  
sikhráp, dǎaw ca lyyᅇm phaasǎa-  
thaj
- Don't speak English, or you  
will forget Thai.
6. jàa duu náᅇsǎyᅇ sikhráp  
khun ca òok sǎaᅇ mǎj thùuk
- jàa duu náᅇsǎyᅇ sikhráp,  
dǎaw ca òok sǎaᅇ mǎj thùuk
- Don't look at your book, or  
your pronunciation will be  
bad.
7. tỳyn thekhráp, sǎaj léew,  
khun ca paj thamᅇaan mǎj  
than
- tỳyn thekhráp, sǎaj léew,  
dǎaw ca paj thamᅇaan mǎj than
- Get up. It's late already.  
Otherwise you won't get to  
work on time.
8. jàa cháj ᅇeᅇn mǎak nák  
khun ca mǎj miᅇ ᅇeᅇn thǎaw  
juuròop
- jàa cháj ᅇeᅇn mǎak nák,  
dǎaw ca mǎj miᅇ ᅇeᅇn thǎaw  
juuròop
- Don't spend so much money,  
otherwise you won't have any  
money for your trip to Europe.
9. jàa thamᅇaan mǎak kᅇeᅇn paj  
khun ca mǎj sabaaᅇ
- jàa thamᅇaan mǎak kᅇeᅇn paj,  
dǎaw ca mǎj sabaaᅇ
- Don't work too much, or  
you get sick.
10. jàa thǎaw mǎak  
khun ca sòop tòk
- jàa thǎaw mǎak, dǎaw ca sòop  
tòk
- Don't go out a lot (in the  
evenings) or you'll fail  
your exams.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### s) Completion Drill

Example: T: rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǎaw (raw) ca...

S: rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǎaw (raw) ca klàp  
maa māj than

1. jàa noon dýk nák dǎaw ca...
2. jàa phûut rew nák dǎaw nákrian ca...
3. rîip paj thəkhráp dǎaw ca...
4. phûut phaasǎa thaj kan sikhráp dǎaw ca...
5. jàa cháa nák sikhráp dǎaw ñaan ca...
6. jàa phûut naan kəen paj dǎaw kháw ca...
7. jàa thamñaan mâak kəen paj dǎaw ca...

### t) Response Drill (Give a negative response.)

#### Pattern 1 (Question)

#### Pattern 2 (Negative Response)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. khun chuan khraj paj<br>dúaj rýplàaw<br>Did you ask anyone<br>to go along?  | māj dáj chuan khraj (ləej)<br>I didn't ask anyone<br>(at all).        |
| 2. khun rúucàk khraj<br>thfinân bâaṅ māj<br>Do you recognize<br>anybody there? | māj rúucàk khraj (ləej)<br>No, I don't recognize<br>anybody (at all). |
| 3. phóp khraj bâaṅ rýplàaw<br>Did you meet anybody?                            | māj phóp khraj (ləej)<br>I didn't meet anybody<br>(at all).           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. sýy araj maa bâan<br/>rýplàaw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you buy anything?</p>                      | <p>mâj dâj sýy araj maa (lœj)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't buy anything.</p>            |
| <p>5. kamlan khít araj jùu rýy<br/>Thinking about<br/>something?</p>  | <p>mâj dâj khít araj (lœj)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I'm not thinking about<br/>anything.</p> |
| <p>6. wanjùt, paj năj bâan<br/>rýplàaw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you go anywhere<br/>on the holiday?</p> | <p>mâj dâj paj năj (lœj)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't go anywhere.</p>                  |

u) Response Drill (Give a negative response)

- | <u>Pattern 1</u>   | <u>Pattern 2</u>                                      |
|--|---|
| <p>1. mi khraj jùu bâan<br/>Was anybody in?</p>                            | <p>mâj mi khraj jùu<br/>Nobody was in.</p>            |
| <p>2. mi khraj rúucàk kháw<br/>bâan<br/>Did anybody recognize<br/>him?</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj rúucàk<br/>Nobody recognized him.</p> |
| <p>3. mi khraj hěn bâan<br/>Does anybody see?</p>                          | <p>mâj mi khraj hěn<br/>No one sees.</p>              |
| <p>4. mi khraj tham dâj bâan<br/>Can anyone do it?</p>                     | <p>mâj mi khraj tham dâj<br/>Nobody can do it.</p>    |
| <p>5. mi khon maa máj<br/>Is anybody (at all)</p>                          | <p>mâj mi khraj maa<br/>Nobody came.</p>              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. mii khon maa hǎa rýplàaw<br>Did anyone (at all)<br>come visiting? | mâj mii khraj maa<br>Nobody came.        |
| 7. mii khon thoo maa bâaŋ<br>rýplàaw<br>Did anyone telephone?        | mâj mii khraj thoo maa<br>Nobody called. |

### v) Transformation Drill

Change from the human indefinite general form khon  
to the human indefinite familiar form khraj.

#### Pattern 1

#### Pattern 2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. mii <u>khon</u> thoo maa bâaŋ<br>rýplàaw<br>Were there any calls?                | mii khraj thoo maa bâaŋ<br>rýplàaw<br>Did anyone call?                              |
| 2. mii <u>khon</u> maa hǎa rýplàaw<br><br>Were there any<br>visitors?               | mii <u>khraj</u> maa hǎa (phǒm)<br>rýplàaw<br>Did anyone come to<br>see me?         |
| 3. mii <u>khon</u> maa lĕn dontriĭ<br>rýplàaw<br>Did people come and<br>play music? | mii <u>khraj</u> maa lĕn dontriĭ<br>rýplàaw<br>Did anyone come and<br>play music?   |
| 4. mii <u>khon</u> paj duu kilaa<br>mâak máj<br>Do many people go<br>watch sports?  | mii <u>khraj</u> paj duu kilaa<br>mâj<br>Does anyone (of you)<br>(go) watch sports? |
| 5. mii <u>khon</u> paj chûaj kháw<br>rýplàaw<br>Did he get help from<br>anyone?     | mii <u>khraj</u> paj chûaj kháw<br>rýplàaw<br>Did anybody go<br>help him?           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### w) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khraikhraj bòok phǒm wâa phûujǐn chianmâj sǔaj  
Everybody tells me Chiangmai women are beautiful.
2. khraikhraj chǒp phró kháw pen khon sanùk  
Everybody likes him because he's a lot of fun.
3. mâj châj phǒm thâwnán, khraikhraj kô jàak ruaj  
Not just me, (but) everybody wants to be rich.
4. kháw bòok khraikhraj wâa kháw pen naaj tamrùat  
He told everybody he was a policeman.

### x) Transformation Drill (Change to negative.)

#### Pattern 1

1. khraikhraj kô bòok phǒm  
wâa chianmâj nâajùu  
Everybody told me  
Chiangmai is a nice  
place to live.
2. khraikhraj kô chǒp kháw  
Everybody likes him.
3. khraikhraj kô thǎam phǒm  
wâa thammaj khun mâj paj  
Everybody asked me  
why you didn't go.
4. khraikhraj kô jàak hěn  
Everybody wants to  
see.

#### Pattern 2

1. mâj mi khraj bòok phǒm  
wâa chianmâj nâajùu  
Nobody told me  
Chiangmai was a  
nice place to live.
2. mâj mi khraj chǒp kháw  
Nobody likes him.
3. mâj mi khraj thǎam phǒm  
wâa thammaj khun mâj paj  
Nobody asked me why  
you didn't go.
4. mâj mi khraj jàak hěn  
Nobody wants to see

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 29.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student extends an invitation to another,  
The second student indicates that he is:
1. willing      2. unwilling      or      3. reluctant to accept  
the invitation.
- b) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he did something.  
Student 2 says he didn't.  
When student 1 asks him why he didn't, he says  
that he didn't want to do it.
- c) Repeat the above exercise except for the final response.  
In the final response Student 2 says he didn't do it.  
because he was busy, sick, etc.
- d) Student 1 says: 'A friend said to me, would you like  
to...'.  
Student 2 says: 'Did he invites your wife to go too'.  
Student 1 says: 'No, he didn't.'
- e) Student 1: 'Would you like to...'  
Student 2: 'Are you inviting my wife to go  
along too?'  
Student 1: 'I am.'
- f) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he has finished doing  
something (reading books, studying, etc.)  
Student 2 says he has and tells when he finished (or)  
says that he hasn't and gives the reason.
- g) Student 1 asks Student 2 when he arrived at a certain  
place. Student 2 gives him the time. Student 1 asks  
him if he got there on time. Student 2 says he did  
or he didn't.
- h) Student 1 says to Student 2: 'Have you finished --- yet?  
Student 2 says: 'Yes, I have, but (Student 3) hasn't yet.  
Student 3 says: 'That's not so. I've already finished.'  
(Substitute different activities in the first question.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- i) Student 1: 'Let's hurry.'  
Student 2: 'Why?'  
Student 3: Otherwise we won't get to school on time.  
(Substitute other place names for school.)
- j) Student 1: 'Don't be so slow.'  
Student 2: 'Why?'  
Student 3: 'Otherwise you won't get to ... on time.'

### 29.5 VOCABULARY

aâw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aw máj	will you accept? (question word: It is similar in usage to <u>dii máj</u> .)
indianâ	Indiana
òcksĭaŋ	to pronounce
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
dĭaw	or else, otherwise
jĭam	to go to see, to visit
kaanbanjaaj	lecturing, narration
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
khamtòp (khôo)	the answer
lĕæk	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
pâaj	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign
pâaj rôtmee	bus stop

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting, meeting, assemble
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
(kan) thè, (thə, thèet)	why not, let's
thîprachum (hèn)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY

#### (Part I.)

#### 30.1 BASIC EPISODE:

##### A Visit to the Seventh Day Adventist Hospital

khun coon kamlaŋ ca paj jŋam phyŋn thŋi roonphajaabaan mitchhŋn. phyŋn khŋŋŋ khŋw mŋj sabaaj maa lŋaj wan lŋew

khŋw hŋj khonchŋj paj rŋak thŋksŋi hŋj khŋw nyn khan .  
khŋw mŋj jŋak paj rŋak een phrŋ weelaa thŋksŋi hŋn farŋn  
khŋw mŋk ca bŋok raakhaa khŋadoojsŋan phŋen.

khonchŋj rŋak thŋksŋi maa hŋj khŋw khan nyn . pen rŋtmŋj .  
khŋw bŋok khun coon wŋa cŋak bŋan khun coon paj roonphajaa-  
baan mitchhŋn khonkhŋp khŋt khŋadoojsŋan sŋphŋa bŋat. khun  
coon bŋok wŋa phŋen paj. khŋw hŋj khonchŋj tŋo sŋp bŋat.  
thŋksŋi bŋok wŋa thŋa mŋj dŋj sŋpsŋŋn bŋat khŋw kŋ mŋj paj  
phrŋ thŋwnŋn rŋt tŋt.

thŋksŋi khonnŋn khŋprŋt rew mŋak . khun coon khŋŋ hŋj khŋw  
khŋp chŋa chŋa tŋ khonkhŋp mŋj faŋ khŋw lŋej . khun coon  
mŋj sŋap ca tham jaŋŋaj dii.

khun coon mŋj sŋap wŋa thaŋ roonphajaabaan anŋjŋat hŋj  
khŋw jŋam khonkhŋj dŋj kŋi moon . khŋw paj thŋyŋ thŋinŋn  
chŋa kŋen paj, khŋw lŋej paj jŋam phyŋn mŋj than . khŋw  
rŋak rŋt thŋksŋi khan nyn lŋ bŋok hŋj paj sŋn khŋw thŋi  
talŋat nŋt, sanŋam luŋŋ



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 30.2 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchân thammaj
2. thammaj khâw thýn mâj riak théksîi een
3. càak bâan khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchân théksîi khít khâadoojsăan thâwràj
4. khun coon hâj khoncháj tòo thâwràj
5. théksîi bòok wâa janņaj
6. théksîi khonnán khàprót pen janņaj bâan
7. khun coon tham janņaj. khâw bòok khonkhàp wâa janņaj
8. khun coon paj than jîam phyan máj
9. thammaj khâw thýn paj mâj than
10. càak roonphajaabaan mitchân, khâw paj năj

(Part II.)

### 30.3 BASIC EPISODE: A Visit to the Sunday Market.

khun coon deen thîaw talàatnát jùu lăaj chûamoon. thîinîi mi khđonkhăaj thúk jàan, thán khđoncháj, tônmaaaj, lé sàtlían . khđon thîinîi baan jàan kô thùuk, baan jàan kô phseñ . khun coon sýy khđon lăaj jàan . khâw sýy khđonlên hâj lûuk lé khđoncháj hâj phanrajaa . khâw sýy khđon plèekplèek thîi ameerikaa mâj mi hâj khunphôo khunmêe khâw . khâw khít wâa mýa thýn wan khritsamâat khâw ca sòn khđon làwníi paj hâj khunphôo khunmêe khđon khâw thîi ameerikaa. sămrap nõonsăaw khđonkhâw, khâw jan mâj sâap wâa ca hâj araj dii.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sýy khǒŋ sèt lésw khun cǒn kô ca klàp bâan . khanàthîi kháw kamlan jyyñ háa thésîi jùu kháw phóp phýan khon nyn. phýan khonnán chýy khun samǎan khun samǎan khœj rian thîi ameerikaa . mýa rian còp lésw, kháw klàp maa myan thaj lé thamnaan pen khâarâatchakaan krasuan mahàatthaj . kháw dâj thun paj duu naan thîi ameerikaa mýa pii khoosǒo nyn phan kâw rǒoj hòksíp. khun cǒn phóp khun samǎan tǒn thîi khun cǒn kamlan rian phaasǎathaj jùu thîi ameerikaa . tǒnnán kháw phóp khonthaj láaj khon phró weelaa mi khonthaj paj thîi wochintân cawnâathîi krasuan tàanprathêet ca nénam háj nákrían phaasǎathaj rúucàk phró kháw jàak háj nákrían rúucàk khonthaj lé hət phûut phaasǎathaj kàp khonthaj láaj láaj khon.

### 30.4 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE (Part II.)

1. khun cǒn deen thîaw jùu naan máj
2. thîinân mi araj khǎaj bâan
3. khǒŋ thîinân thùuk rýy phœn
4. khun cǒn sýy araj dâj bâan
5. wankhrítsamâat khun cǒn ca sǒn araj paj háj khunphǒo khunmêe kháw
6. wan khrítsamâat khun cǒn ca háj khǒŋkhwǎn araj nóŋsǎaw kháw
7. khanàthîi kháw ca klàp kháw phóp khraj
8. khun samǎan thamnaan araj



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kháw ca chûaj khun (kô tɛɛ) 'He will help you only  
mýa kháw hɛn wâa khun mi when he sees that you  
prajòot kakháw are useful to him.'

b) Although both sèt and còp are completive verbs they differ somewhat in meaning and usage:

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamnaan sèt lésw 'He has finished working.'

kháw jan tham mâj sèt 'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. còp 'to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)'

lik 2 dyan phóm ca rian 'I'll finish the Thai  
phaasăa thaj còp khráp course in 2 months.'

raw duu năj mâj còp 'We didn't see the movie  
to the end.'

NOTE: Either sèt or còp may occur in sentences which are otherwise identical. The selection of one over the other indicates a difference in emphasis or focus. With sèt the focus is on the activity in general; with còp it is on the completion of a particular action.

kháw khían còtmăaj sèt 'He has finished letter  
lésw writing.'

kháw khían còtmăaj còp 'He has finished writing  
lésw a (the) letter.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 30.6 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

m̂ya waann̂i	yesterday
m̂ya cháaw	this morning (past time)
m̂ya bàaj ŝooŋ moon	2 p.m. (It's later than that now.)
m̂ya khyyn	last night
m̂ya dèk (dèk)	in childhood
m̂ya pĥom maa tĥyŋ tĥin̂i	When I had just got here.
m̂ajm̂aj	
m̂ya pĥom jaŋ thamŋaan ĵuu	When I was still working
tĥin̂ân	here.

#### b) Transformation Drill

##### Pattern 1

- kháw ca maa tĥyŋ weelaa bàaj  
moon  
He'll get her at 1 p.m.
- pĥom ca thaان weelaa ĥaa moon  
jen  
I'll eat at 5 p.m.
- pĥom ca pĥóp kháw jenn̂i  
I'll meet her this evening.
- kháw ca paj t̂ooncháaw  
They'll go in the morning.

##### Pattern 2

- kháw maa tĥyŋ (léew) m̂ya  
bàaj moon  
He got here at 1 p.m.
- pĥom thaان (léew) m̂ya ĥaa  
moon jen  
I ate at 5 p.m.
- pĥom pĥóp kháw (léew) m̂ya  
jenn̂i  
I met her this evening.
- kháw paj m̂ya (t̂oon) cháaw  
They went in the morning.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5.   kháw ca maa háa phǒm weelaa                      kháw maa háa phǒm mýa bàaj  
      bàaj moon    moon  
      He'll come to see me                              He came to see me at  
      at 1 p.m.    1 p.m.

### c) Response Drill

The instructor reads a cue sentence then forms a question based on it. A student gives a response to it. The instructor forms a second sentence, and the student answers that. Sentences and responses are based on the cue sentence.

1.   mýa kháw rian còp, kháw kô klàp maa myan thaj  
      When he finished his studies, he returned to  
      Thailand.

#### Question

mýa kháw rian còp,  
kháw tham janṇaj

When he finished his  
studies, what did he  
do?

#### Response

kháw klàp paj myan thaj

He returned to Thailand.

2.   mýa kháw dèk dèk, kháw chòp nǐi rian  
      When he was a child, he liked to avoid studying.

#### Question

mýa dèk dèk, kháw pen  
janṇaj

What was he like, when  
he was a child?

#### Response

kháw chòp nǐi rian

He liked to avoid  
studying.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kháw chôop nǐi rian m̄yaraj      m̄ya dèk dèk  
When did he like to avoid      When he was a child.  
studying?

3. phǒm maa m̄ya kháw paj léew  
I came when he had already gone.

### Question

phǒm maa m̄yaraj  
When did I come?

### Response

m̄ya kháw paj léew  
When he had already  
gone.

toon thǐi kháw jan jùu  
phǒm maa rýjan  
Had I come while he  
was still there?

jan m̄aj maa . khun maa  
m̄ya kháw paj léew  
Not yet. You came after  
he had already gone.

4. m̄ya phǒm rêem rian phaasǎa thaj m̄aj m̄aj, phǒm khít  
w̄a phaasǎa thaj j̄aak m̄aak  
Right after I started studying Thai, I thought  
it was very hard.

### Question

m̄ya phǒm rêem rian phaasǎa  
thaj m̄aj m̄aj, phǒm rúsyk  
janraj

Right after I began  
studying Thai, how  
did I feel?

### Response

khun khít w̄a phaasǎa thaj  
j̄aak m̄aak

You thought Thai was  
very hard.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

tɔɔnníi phǒm khít wâa phaasǎa  
thaj mâj jâak, châj máj

Now I think Thai isn't  
hard, right?

mâj châj, tɔɔnníi khun  
khít wâa mâj jâak myǎn myǎ  
tɔɔnthîi khun rian màj màj

Not so. Now you don't  
think it's (as) hard (as)  
when you first started  
studying it.

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun àan nǎnsǎy lêmníi còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading this book yet?	phǒm àan nǎnsǎy lêmníi còp lèew khráp I have finished reading this book.
2. khun àan nǎnsǎy lêmnan còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading that book yet?	phǒm àan nǎnsǎy lêm nan jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished reading that book yet.
3. khun khǎan còtmǎaj còp léew rýjaŋ khráp. phǒm ca paj sòŋ hâj Have you finished writing that letter yet? I'll mail it for you.	phǒm khǎan còtmǎaj jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished writing the letter yet.
4. khun ca rian phaasǎa thaj còp mýaràj khráp When will you finish studying Thai?	phǒm ca rian còp dyan nâa khráp I'll finish next month.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>5. khun rian bòt thfi súp pèet còp<br/>lésw rýjan khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Have you finished studying<br/>lesson 18 yet?</p>               | <p>(phǒm) rian (bót thfi súp<br/>pèet) jan mâj còp khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(I) haven't finished<br/>studying (lesson 18)<br/>yet.</p>                                |
| <p>6. mýakhyynníi, khun duu nǎn còp<br/>máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you finish seeing the<br/>movie last night? (see to<br/>the end)</p> | <p>mýakhyynníi, raw duu nǎn<br/>mâj còp phró tǒn ríip<br/>klàp bâan kòon nǎn lâek</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">No, because we had to<br/>hurry home before it<br/>was over.</p> |
| <p>7. khun phûut còp (rýan) máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you finish telling<br/>your story.</p>   | <p>phǒm phûut mâj còp khráp<br/>phró kháw hâj weelaa phǒm<br/>nóoj kǎen paj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't finish because<br/>they gave me too little<br/>time.</p>      |
| <p>8. khun rian (mahǎawítthajaalaj)<br/>còp pii nǎj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In which year did you<br/>graduate from the university?</p>      | <p>phǒm { riancòp pii phosǒ<br/>          { còp</p> <p>sǒn phan hâaróoj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I graduated in B.E.<br/>2500.</p>                                    |
| <p>9. khun cóp càak mahǎawít-<br/>thajaalaj araj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What university did you<br/>graduate from?</p>                      | <p>phǒm còp càak mahǎawíttha-<br/>jaalaj indianâa khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I graduated from the<br/>University of Indiana.</p>  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Translation of Basic Episode: Part I.

John is about to go visit a friend at the 7th Day Adventist Hospital. His friend has been ill for several days.

He had a servant to get a taxi (for him). He didn't want to go for one himself, because whenever taxis see a Westerner, they ask for higher fares.

The servant called a taxi for him. It was new. He told John the driver figured the fare from his house to the Adventist Hospital at 15 baht. John said it was too expensive. He had the servant bargain for 10. The taxi (driver) said that if he didn't get 12 baht, then he wasn't going because the traffic was heavy in that area.

The driver drove very fast. John asked him to drive slower, but the driver didn't listen to him at all. John didn't know what to do.

John didn't know at what time the hospital allowed one to visit patients. He got there too late, so he didn't get there in time to visit his friend. He called a taxi and told (the driver) to take him to the (Sunday) Market at the Pramane Grounds.

### Translation of Basic Episode: Part II.

John spent hours walking around at the Sunday Market. There were all kinds of things for sale there: things to use, plants, and pets. Some things were cheap; some expensive. John bought a lot of things. He bought toys for children and things to use for his wife. He bought unusual things that are not available in the U.S. for his mother and father. He thought he'd send some of these things to his mother and father in America at Christmas. He didn't know what he ought to give to his younger sister.

The shopping done, John goes home. While he is standing looking for a taxi, he meets a friend. His friend is name Saman. Saman studied in America. After he graduated, he

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

returned to Thailand and worked as an employee of the Ministry of the Interior. He got a grant to go observe work (1) in America in 1960. John met Saman while John was studying Thai in America. At that time he met many Thais because when there are Thais visiting Washington, State Department officials introduce them to the students of Thai, because they want student to meet Thais and to practice speaking Thai with many Thais.

### 30.7 VOCABULARY

duu naan	to observe work, an observation
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train
khanáthîi	while
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khǒŋlên (jàaŋ)	play things, toy
làwníi	these, this group
làwnán	those, that group
nénam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnénam	advice, suggestion, instruction
plèek (plèek)	to be unusual, to be strange
samǎan	Saman, male or female first name
sàt (tua)	animal
...líaaŋ (tua)	pet
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
tôn máaj (tôn)	plants, tree

---

(1) An observation tour

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-ONE

#### 31.0 BASIC DIALOG: Looking for a Place to Live

- A: m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj hǎa  
khun t̄eε m̄aj phóp  
Yesterday I went to see you  
but didn't see you.
- B: phǒm paj hǎa b̄anch̄aaw  
I went to look for a house  
to rent.
- A: khun ca j̄u eεn l̄ǎ  
Will you live (there)  
yourself?
- B: pl̄aaw. hǎa h̄aj ph̄yan  
khun w̄aa, j̄u b̄aan ka j̄u  
aph̄aatm̄en n̄aj ca dii kw̄aa  
kan  
No. I'm looking for a friend.  
You think it's better to live  
in a house or an apartment?
- A: ph̄yan khun pen s̄ot r̄y  
t̄en̄naan l̄eεw  
Is your friend single or  
married?
- B: pen s̄ot khr̄ap  
He's single.
- A: khwaamciŋ, tua phǒm eεn  
ch̄ōp j̄u b̄aan m̄aak kw̄aa  
t̄eε s̄amr̄ap khon s̄ot, phǒm  
w̄aa j̄u fl̄et dii kw̄aa  
Actually, as for me I  
prefer living in a house.  
But for single persons, I  
think living in a flat is  
better
- B: tham̄aj lakhr̄ap  
Why?
- A: sad̄uak kw̄aa j̄u b̄aan  
l̄e p̄lyan n̄ōoj kw̄aa phr̄o  
m̄aj t̄ōŋ c̄aŋ khonch̄aj  
l̄ǎaj khon  
It's more convenient than  
living in a house.  
And less expensive, because  
you don't have to hire a  
lot of servants.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<p>B: cɪnǎ          plòt phaj kwàa dûaj          mâj tɔŋ klua khamooj</p>	<p>Right.          It's safer too.          You don't have to be afraid          of thieves.</p>
---	--

### 31.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) phóp and dâj occur after hǎa 'to look for', try to find' and indicate the result of the action of 'looking'.

Observe the following examples:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Responses</u>	
	<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>
<u>hǎa phóp máj</u>	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>phóp</u>	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>mâj phóp</u>
'Did you get to see him?'	'Yes, I did.'	'No, I didn't.'
<u>hǎa dâj máj</u>	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>dâj</u>	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>mâj dâj</u>
'Did you get (what you were looking for)?'	'Yes, I did.'	'No, I didn't.'

Observe also these two examples:

(phǒm) hǎa mâj dâj phró mâj miɪ khǎaj

'I didn't get any because it wasn't for sale.'

(phǒm) hǎa mâj phóp phró mâj jùu

'I didn't get to see him because he wasn't in.'

cəe 'to meet, run into unexpectedly' may replace phóp in constructions with hǎa involving human beings, thus hǎa phóp máj or hǎa cəe máj 'Did you get to see him?'. In constructions referring to objects cəe rather than phóp is used, thus

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: nánsǎy hǎa.j 'I lost my book.'  
B: hǎa cəe má.j 'Did you find it?'  
A: mâ.j cəe 'No, I didn't.'

When cəe is used as the main verb in the sentence, it has the meaning 'to meet unexpectedly':

mýawaanní phǒm cəe phýan kàw  
'Yesterday I ran into an old friend.'

b) /kwàa/ means 'more than, to a greater extent'.

1. After stative verbs, use /kwàa/ alone.

Examples:

phaasǎa aṅkrít jâak kwàa phaasǎa thaj  
'English is more difficult than Thai.'

2. After other verbs, use mâak kwàa for 'more than'  
and nóoj kwàa for 'less than'.

Examples:

piiní raw mii nákrían nóoj kwàa pii kòon.  
'This year we have more students than last year.'

phǒm chôp khun mâak kwàa kháw  
'I like you less than him.'

3. Where degree of difference is stated, observe in the following examples, the position of forms indicating degree of difference.

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

	NP <sup>1</sup>	Stative Verb + <u>kwaa</u>	NP <sup>2</sup>	Degree of Difference	
(1.)	thîinîi mi Here there are	nákrian students	mâak kwàa more than	khruu teachers	400 khon 400
		'There are 400 more students than teachers here.'			
(2.)		khun you	sǔaj kwàa pretty more than	kháw she	mâak much a lot
		'You are a lot prettier than she (is).'			

c) khít (wâa) jaŋŋaj versus khít araj

Use jaŋŋaj when asking for a person's opinion or comment on something.

khun khít (wâa) jaŋŋaj                    'What do you think?'

khun wâa jaŋŋaj                            (What's your opinion?)

kháw wâa jaŋŋaj                            'What did he say?'  
(What was his reaction?)

Use araj to find out what is in a person's mind.

khun kamlaŋ khít araj                    'What are you thinking  
{ about?'  
{ of?'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 31.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u> (contracted form)
1. hǎa tɛɛ mâj phóp locked for but didn't meet with	hǎa mâj phóp didn't find
2. hǎa tɛɛ mâj cəə looked for but didn't meet with	hǎa mâj cəə didn't find
3. hǎa tɛɛ mâj dâj looked for but didn't get	hǎa mâj dâj didn't succeed in getting

#### b) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns a and b to form Pattern c.)

<u>Patterns a and b</u>	<u>Pattern c</u>
1. kháw jàak phóp phýan a. kháw paj hǎa phýan thîi bân b. kháw mâj phóp phýan He wanted to see his friend. He went to see his friend at home. He did not meet his friend.	kháw <u>paj hǎa</u> phýan (tɛɛ) <u>mâj phóp</u> He went to see his friend but didn't see him.
2. lûuksǎaw kháw hǎaj a. kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw b. kháw mâj { cəə lûuksǎaw { phóp His daughter disappeared. He looked for his daughter. He didn't find his daughter.	kháw <u>hǎa</u> lûuksǎaw (tɛɛ) <u>mâj</u> { cəə { phóp He looked for his daughter without success.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. náŋsǔy phǒm hǎaj                      phǒm hǎa náŋsǔy  
a. phǒm hǎa náŋsǔy                      (tɛɛ) mâj cəə  
b. phǒm mâj cəə náŋsǔy                      I looked for my book  
My book was lost.                              without success.  
I looked for my book.  
I didn't discover my book.
4. phǒm jàak dâj náŋsǔy lêmnan                      phǒm hǎa (sýy) náŋsǔy  
a. phǒm hǎa (sýy) náŋsǔy lêmnan                      lêmnan (tɛɛ) mâj dâj  
b. phǒm mâj dâj náŋsǔy lêmnan                      I tried unsuccessfully  
I'd like to get that book.                              to get (buy) that book.  
I sought (to buy) that book.  
I didn't get that book.
- c) Expansion Drill
1. dâj máj khráp                      dâj máj khráp  
hǎa                                      hǎa dâj máj khráp  
sýy                                      hǎa sýy dâj máj khráp  
pàakkaa                              hǎa sýy pàakkaa dâj máj khráp
2. phóp máj khráp                      phóp máj khráp  
hǎa                                      hǎa phóp máj khráp  
phýan                                      hǎa phýan phóp máj khráp
3. cəə máj khráp                      cəə máj khráp  
hǎa                                      hǎa cəə máj khráp  
khǒɔŋ                                      hǎa khǒɔŋ cəə máj khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the questions, if the cue word indicates that the search was successful (jùu), respond negatively, if the cue word indicates that the search was unsuccessful (mâj jùu).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mỳawaanníi khun paj hǎa kháw phóp máj khráp Did you find him when you went to see him yesterday?	kháw jùu  He was in.	phóp khráp  (Yes) I did.
2. mỳakîiníi khun paj hǎa nákpahasǎa phóp máj khráp When you went to see the linguist a while ago, did you find him?	mâj jùu  He wasn't in.	mâj phóp khráp  (No), I didn't.
3. mỳakhyynníi, kháw maa hǎa khun phóp máj When he came to see you last night, did he see you?	jùu  I was in.	phóp khráp  He did.
4. (khun) paj hǎa mǎo phóp máj When you went to see the doctor, did you see him?	jùu  He was in.	phóp khráp  I did.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. m̄yákíiní, ph̄yan khun maa

h̄aa khun th̄i roon̄rian

phóp máj khráp

m̄aj j̄uu

m̄aj phóp

A short time ago when  
your friend came to  
see you at school,  
did you meet?

I wasn't in.

He didn't.

6. khun h̄aa b̄ee thoorasàp

kh̄õõj kh̄aw naj samùt

thoorasàp phóp máj khráp

m̄aj j̄uu naj samùt

m̄aj phóp

Did you find his number  
in the phone book?

It wasn't there.

I didn't.

### e) Substitution Response Drill

The teacher gives 2 cue words. One student forms a statement using the first cue word. Another student asks the question h̄aa c̄eə máj khráp. The first then responds either negatively or affirmatively according to the second cue word.

<u>Cue word</u>	<u>Statement/question/response</u>
<u>n̄ans̄ȳy</u> .... No	S1: n̄ans̄ȳy ph̄õm h̄aaj      My book was lost. S2: h̄aa c̄eə máj khráp      Did you find it? S1: <u>m̄aj c̄eə</u> khráp      No, I didn't.

Continue the drill using the following cue words:

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. n̄en ph̄õm.... No     | 2. p̄aakkaa ph̄õm.... Yes |
| 3. d̄ins̄õõ ph̄õm.... No | 4. l̄ũuks̄ǎaw.... No      |
| 5. khonch̄áj.... Yes     | 6. r̄ót ph̄õm.... Yes     |
| 7. naalikaa kh̄aw.... No | 8. krap̄ǎaw ph̄õm.... No  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mii	khun hǎa nǎnsǎy lêmnan dâj máj khráp Did you find that book?	dâj khráp I did.
2. mii	khun hǎa sǎy nǎnsǎy phaasǎa thaj dâj máj khráp Were you able to buy the Thai book you were looking for?	dâj khráp  I was.
3. mâj mii	khun hǎa khoncháj dâj máj khráp Were you able to find the servants you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp  No, I wasn't.
4. mâj mii	kháv hǎa khruu sǎon phaasǎa ankrít dâj máj khráp Did you find the English teacher you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp  No, I didn't.
5. mâj mii	khun hǎa baan dâj máj khráp Did you find the house you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp  No, I didn't.

### g) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. mǎwaaanníi rǎon  
Yesterday it was hot.  
  
wanníi rǎon mâak  
Today it's very hot.

#### Pattern 3

- wanníi rǎon kwàa mǎwaaanníi  
It's hotter today than  
yesterday.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. phûujǐn khonnán suǎj

That girl's pretty.

phûujǐn khonníi sǔaj mâak

This girl's very pretty.

phûujǐn khonníi suǎj kwàa

phûujǐn khonnán

This girl is prettier  
than that one.

3. bâan phǒm klaj

My house is far.

bâan kháw klaj mâak

His house is very far.

bâan kháw klaj kwàa bâan phǒm

His house is farther than  
mine.

4. klaanwan rǒon

In the daytime it's hot.

klan̄khyyn mâj rǒon

At night it's not hot.

klaanwan rǒon kwàa klan̄khyyn

It's hotter in the daytime  
than at night.

5. thǐnôn aakàat dii

There the weather is good.

thǐnǐi aakàat dii mâak

Here the weather is  
very good.

thǐnǐi aakàat dii kwàa

thǐnôn

Here the weather is better  
than there.

6. nákrían khonníi kèn

This student is smart.

nákrían khonnán kèn mâak

That student is very smart.

nákrían khonnán kèn kwàa

nákrían khonníi

That student is smarter  
than this one.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. aahǎan thîi ráannán dii

The food in that shop  
is good.

aahǎan thîi ráanníi dii mâak.

The food in this shop  
is very good.

aahǎan thîi ráanníi dii kwàa  
raannán

The food in this shop  
is better than in that  
shop.

8. kháw duu nánsǎy dỳk

He studies late at night.

phǒm duu nánsǎy dỳk mâak

I study very late at night.

phǒm duu nánsǎy dỳk kwàa kháw

I study later at night  
than he.

9. kháw maa roonriian cháaw

He came to school early.

phǒm maa roonriian sǎaj

I came to school late.

phǒm maa roonriian sǎaj kwàa  
khw

I came to school later  
than he.

(kháw maa roonriian cháaw  
kwàa phǒm)

He came to school earlier  
than I.

10. phaasǎa thaj mâj jâak

Thai is not hard.

phaasǎa ankrít jâak

English is hard.

phaasǎa ankrít jâak kwàa

phaasǎa thaj

English is harder than Thai.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

11. ɲaan wannán mâj sànuḁ

That day's party wasn't fun.

ɲaan wanníi sanùḁ

Today's party is fun.

ɲaan wanníi sanùḁ kwàa

ɲaan wannán

The party today is more  
fun than that other party.

12. rót kháw kàw

His car is old.

rót phǒm màj

My car is new.

rót phǒm màj kwàa rót kháw

My car is newer than his.

13. jùu bân sadùak

It's convenient to live  
in a house.

jùu apháatmên sadùak mâak

It's very convenient to  
live in an apartment.

jùu apháatmên sadùak kwàa

jùu bân

Living in an apartment  
is more convenient than  
living in a house.

14. jùu apháatmênt mâj plyaṅ

Living in an apartment  
is not expensive.

jùu bân plyaṅ mâak

Living in a house is  
very expensive.

jùu bân plyaṅ kwàa jùu

apháatmên

Living in a house is  
more expensive than  
living in an apartment.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. jùu naj myaŋ	jùu naj myaŋ ka jùu nòk myaŋ, nǎj ca saduak kwàa kan  Which is more convenient, living in town or in the country?	jùu naj myaŋ saduak kwàa  Living in the city.
2. jùu krunthêep	jùu krunthêep ka jùu tãaŋcaŋwàt, nǎj ca plyaŋ kwàa kan  Which is more expensive, living in Bangkok or the provinces?	jùu krunthêep plyaŋ kwàa  Living in Bangkok.
3. ubon	ubon ka khorâat, nǎj ca jùu klaj (càak krunthêep) kwàa kan  Which is farther from Bangkok, Ubon or Korat?	ubon klaj kwàa  Ubon.
4. sùkhõothaj	caŋwàt ajúthajaa ka sùkhõothaj, nǎj ca kàw kwàa kan  Which is older, Ayuthaya or Sukhotai province?	sùkhõothaj kàw kwàa  Sukhotai.
5. rót khannán	rót khannán ka rót khanní, nǎj ca phœŋ kwàa kan  Which is more expensive, that car or this one?	rót khannán phœŋ kwàa  That one.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 6. | nákrían chánán nákrían chánán ka channí, náj ca mâak kwàa kan<br>In which class are there more students, that one or this one? | nákrían chánán mâak kwàa<br>That one.       |
| 7. | krunthêep ka chianmàj, náj ca mii khon jùu mâak kwàa kan<br>Which has a larger population, Bangkok or Chiangmai?               | krunthêep mii khonjùu mâak kwàa<br>Bangkok. |

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nakrian kàw	nákrían kàw ka nákrían màj, khraj ca phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii kwàa kan Which can speak Thai better, the old students or the new ones?	nákrían kàw phûut dâj dii kwàa The old.
2. khun sawàt	khun sawàt kakhun prasǎng khraj (ca) kèn kwàa kan Who is more skillful, Sawat or Prasong?	khun sawàt kèn kwàa Sawat.
3. phyan khonnán	phyan khun khonnán ka khonní, khraj (ca) khâwcaj khun dii kwàa kan Who understands you better, that friend of yours or this one?	phyan phǎm khonnán khâwcaj phǎm dii kwàa That one understands me better.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4.   khun coon           khun coon ka khun cim, khraj       khun coon khàp  
                          khàp rôt rew kwàa kan               rew kwàa  
                          Who drives faster,  
                          John or Jim?                               John.

### j) Expansion Drill

1.   mâak kwàa  
      mii mâak kwàa  
      mii ñen mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii ñen mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii ñen mâak kwàa phǒm
  
2.   mâak kwàa  
      mii mâak kwàa  
      mii nákrían mâak kwàa  
      chánán mii nákrían mâak kwàa  
      chánán mii nákrían mâak kwàa chánníi
  
3.   mâak kwàa  
      mii mâak kwàa  
      mii weelaa mâak kwàa  
      mii weelaa wâaᅇ mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii weelaa wâaᅇ mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii weelaa wâaᅇ kwàa phǒm
  
4.   mâak kwàa  
      chᅇᅇp mâak kwàa  
      chᅇᅇp jùu bâan mâak kwàa  
      phǒm chᅇᅇp jùu bâan mâak kwàa  
      phǒm chᅇᅇp jùu bâan mâak kwàa jùu apháatmēt

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. mâak kwàa  
chôp mâak kwàa  
chôp khun mâak kwàa  
phôm chôp khun mâak kwàa  
phôm chôp khun mâak kwàa kháw

6. mâak kwàa  
tham mâak kwàa  
kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa  
kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa phôm  
kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa phôm lăaj chûamoon

### k) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw rian nánsŷy wan la hòk  
chûamoon

He has classes 6 hours a day.

raw rian nánsŷy wan la sìi  
chûamoon

We have classes 4 hours  
a day.

#### Pattern 3

kháw rian nánsŷy mâak kwàa  
raw wan la sŏon chûamoon

He has classes 2 hours  
more per day than we do.

2. thŷi roonrian mii khruu  
róoj khon

There are 100 teachers  
at school.

thŷi roonrian mii nákrían  
hâa róoj khon

There are 500 students  
at school.

thŷi roonrian mii nákrían  
mâak kwàa khruu sìi róoj khon

There are 400 more students  
than teachers at school.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. khun wichaj mii bùt sǐi khon

Wichai has 4 children.

khun prasèet mii bùt sǒɔŋ khon

Prasert has 2 children.

khun wichaj mii bùt mâak

kwàa khun prasèet sǒɔŋ khon

Wichai has 2 more children  
than Prasert.

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

nóɔj kwàa	less
plyaŋ nóɔj kwàa	less beautiful
mii nóɔj kwàa	have less
chǒɔp nóɔj kwàa	like less
phûut nóɔj kwàa	speak less
tham nóɔj kwàa	do less
thaan nóɔj kwàa	eat less
sýy nóɔj kwàa	buy less
rian nóɔj kwàa	study less

### m) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. khǒɔŋ thǐi ráan níi mii mâak kwàa

khǒɔŋ thǐi ráan nóon

There are more things in  
this shop than that one.

2. kháw mii ñen mâak kwàa phǒm

He has more money than I.

#### Pattern 2

khǒɔŋ thǐi ráan nóon mii

nóɔj kwàa ráan níi

There are less things  
in that shop than this  
one.

phǒm mii ñen nóɔj kwàa kháw

I have less money than he.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. kháw cháj nøen mâak kwàa phǒm.      phǒm cháj nøen nóoj kwàa kháw  
He spends more money than I.      I spend less money than he.
4. jùu bâan plyan kwàa jùu  
apháatmên.      jùu apháatmênt plyan nóoj  
kwàa jùu bâan  
Living in a house is more      Living in an apartment  
expensive than living in      is less expensive than  
an apartment.      living in a house.
5. nóoj khǒj khun sǒmsàk rian  
mâak kwàa khun sǒmsàk  
Somsak's younger brothers      khun sǒmsàk rian nóoj kwàa  
and sisters study more      nóoj khǒj kháw  
than he.      Somsak studies less than  
his younger siblings.
6. phûujǐn khonnán phûut mâak  
kwàa phûujǐn khonnón  
That woman talks more than      phûujǐn khonnón phûut nóoj  
the one over there.      kwàa phûujǐn khonnán  
The woman over there  
talks less than that  
one.
7. phǒm chǒp phýan kháw mâak  
kwàa kháw  
I like his friends better      phǒm chǒp kháw nóoj kwàa  
than him.      phýan kháw  
I like him less than  
(I like) his friends.
8. khun sǒmsǐi suǎj kwàa  
nóoj sǎaw kháw  
Somsri is prettier than      nóoj sǎaw khun sǒmsǐi suǎj  
her younger sister.      nóoj kwàa khun sǒmsǐi  
Somsri's younger sister  
is less pretty than  
Somsri.
9. kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa  
phǒm aathít la hòk chûamoon  
He works 6 hours a week      phǒm thamnaan nóoj kwàa kháw  
more than I do.      aathít la hòk chûamoon  
I work 6 hours a week  
less than he does.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. phǎichaaǰ phǎm miǐ bùt mâak  
kwàa phǎm sǎon khon  
My older brother has 2  
more children than I.
- phǎm miǐ bùt nóoj kwàa  
phǎichaaǰ phǎm sǎon khon  
I have two less children  
than my older brother.

### n) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

#### Pattern 2

1. phǎm khít wâa, jùu apháatmên  
dii kwàa  
I think living in an apartment is better.
2. phǎm khít wâa, pen sòot diǐ kwàa  
I think being single is better.
3. phǎm khít wâa, phɛɛŋ paj  
I think it's too expensive.
4. phǎm khít wâa, raw khuan ca  
bòok kháw  
I think we should tell her.
5. phǎm khít wâa, raw khuan ca  
bòok (paj) kòon thǎn  
I think we should leave before noon.
6. phǎm khít wâa, raw mâj khuan  
sýy rót khannán  
I don't think we should buy the car.
7. phǎm khít wâa, kháw khon maa  
I think he will surely come.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

o) Expansion Drill

janɲaj	How.
wâa (jaɲ) ɲaj	What do (you) think <sup>1</sup> ?
khun wâa janɲaj	What do you think?
khun <u>khít</u> wâa janɲaj	What do you think?
khun <u>mii</u> <u>khwaam</u> <u>khít</u> <u>hěn</u> wâa janɲaj	What's your opinion?
khun <u>mii</u> <u>khwaam</u> <u>khít</u> <u>hěn</u> <u>kìaw</u> <u>kàp</u>	What's your opinion
ryâɲɲí wâa janɲaj	about this matter?
{ bân	
{ mân	

p) Expansion Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

<p>1. phǒm wâa dii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's good.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa dii, khun la khráp, wâa janɲaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's good. And you, what do you think?</p>
<p>2. phǒm wâa mâj khuan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you shouldn't.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa mâj khuan, khun la khráp, wâa janɲaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you shouldn't. And you, what do you think?</p>
<p>3. phǒm wâa khuan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you should.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa khuan, khun la khráp wâa janɲaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you should. And you, what do you think?</p>
<p>4. phǒm wâa mâj thùuk</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's not so.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa mâj thùuk, khun la khráp, wâa janɲaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's not so. And you? what do you think?</p>

---

<sup>1</sup>(Idiom = 'What are you up to?' [To Intimates or Inferiors])

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj                      phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj, khun la khráp,  
wâa jaŋŋaj  
I think it's too expensive.                      I think it's too expensive.  
And what do you think?
6. phǒm wâa nâab̀ya                      phǒm wâa nâab̀ya, khun lakhráp,  
wâa jaŋŋaj  
I think it's boring.                      I think it's boring. And you,  
what do you think?

### 31.3 EXERCISES

- a) Have students compare various persons and objects in terms of certain qualities (good, pretty, etc.).
- b) Compare various activities in terms of convenience, pleasure, etc.
- c) One student expresses an opinion and asks another student's opinion of the same thing.
- d) One student reports on the loss of some object (watch, etc.) A second asks if he has found it. He indicates he has or hasn't.
- e) One student says that he went to look for something or someone. Another asks if he was successful in his search. The first indicates he was (or wasn't).
- f) Two students compare the weather 1) on different days, 2) in different months, 3) at different times of the day, and 4) in different places.
- g) One student asks another about the weather at some other place or some other time of the year.
- h) Find out which of 2 things various students prefer.
- i) Find out the extent of superiority of one thing over another.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- j) Compare the number of hours per day or week various people participate in various activities.
- k) One student asks another his opinion on something. The second gives it.
- l) One student asks another what he is thinking about at the moment.
- m) One student asks another if he thinks he should do one thing or the other. The second gives his opinion.

### 31.4 VOCABULARY

apháatmên (lǎŋ)	apartments
bâanchâw (lǎŋ)	a house to rent
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
châw	to rent
(hǎa) dâj	to get. (It indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
hǎa { phóp	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
{ cəə	
hǎaj (paʝ)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
jâak	to be difficult
khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khamooj	thief, robber
khwaamciŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamkhíthěn	opinion
k̀law k̀ap	about
klua	to be afraid of
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent
lǎŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mâṅ / bâṅ	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent
nóṅ	to be little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
plòṅtphaṅ	to be safe, out of danger
plyaṅ	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
sadùak	to be convenient
samùt, thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sathǎanthîi (hèn)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sǎa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sòot	to be single, unmarried state
(khon) sòot	single person, bachelor, spinster
tua phǎm eeaṅ	I (myself)
... kháw eeaṅ	he (himself)
... raw eeaṅ	we (ourselves), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
wâa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-TWO

#### 32.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (2)

- A: khun dâj bâanchâw léew rýjan      Have you got a house to rent yet?
- B: jan khráp      Not yet.
- A: naj sooj bâan phôm mii bâan      On my lane there's a house for rent.  
wâan hâj châw jùu lănyj
- B: khâw khít khâachâw janraj khráp      How much is the rent?
- A: phôm mâj dâj thăam raaj la-iat      I didn't ask the details.  
pen bâanmâj      It's a new house.  
nâajùu dii      It's cozy.  
sámrap khrôpkhrua léklék      For a small family like yours the size is just right, not too small, not too big.  
jàan khun, khanàat kamlan  
phoodii, mâj lék mâj jàj  
kœen paj
- B: jùu klaj càak thanôn jàj máj      Is it far from the main street?  
khráp
- A: jùu hàan càak pàak sooj raaw      It's around 2 kilometers or so from the end of the lane.  
raaw sŏn kiloo kwàa khráp
- B: phôm ca tittò ka câwkhŏn-      How do I get in touch with the owner?  
bâan dâj janraj
- A: thoo paj thăam khâw doojtron      Call him directly.  
khráp.mâj tŏn phàn naajnáa      You don't have to go through the agent.
- B: bâan khâw thoorasàp bæe araj      What's his home phone number?
- A: bæe kâaw hòk thoo sǎam sǐi hòk      962-346

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 32.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) The stative verb dii occurs in several different types of constructions with different meanings:

X + <u>dii</u>	Examples	Meaning of <u>dii</u>
<b>I. <u>Nouns</u></b>		
A. Animate (Human)		
1. People in general	<u>khon dii</u>	good moral character
2. People in special roles	<u>khruu thfi dii</u> <sup>1</sup>	good at doing something
B. Inanimate		
1. Objects	<u>tó dii</u>	good quality
2. Places	<u>krunthêep dii</u> <sup>2</sup>	good for some special purpose
<b>II. <u>Verbs</u></b>		
A. Action verbs	<u>kháw rian dii</u>	well, efficiently
B. Stative verbs	<u>jàj dii</u>	nice and (big)
<b>III. <u>Sentences</u></b>		
A. Questions	<u>tham araj dii</u>	to be acceptable, all right

1. When used with nouns indicating family roles (son, etc.), professional roles (teacher, etc.), thfidii is used to indicate that the person is performing well in that particular role without regard to his moral character.
2. This type of construction can only be used when it is clear from the context in what respect a place can be called 'good'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) mii ... jùu calls attention to the fact that a certain thing is in existence at a particular time or place. Its existence may be temporary or accidental.

toon nán phǒm mii nǝen jùu raaw hâasìp bàat thâwnán  
At that time I had only about fifty baht (on me).

tron pàak sooj mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu ráan nyn  
Right at the end of the lane there is (located) a coffee shop.

- c) khít jannaaj means 'how is it figured?(what is included in the calculations)'

kháw khít khâachâw jannaaj khráp  
'How is the rent figured? (What's included in the rent?)'

khít thâwraaj means 'How much does it amount to?';

kháw khít khâachâw thâwraaj, 'How much is the rent?'

- d) nâa is a verb meaning 'worthy of, leading to, or able' which combines with other verbs to form verb compounds:

nâarák 'loveable, cute: nâa 'worthy of' + rák 'love'

nâacháj 'nice to use': nâa 'nice' + cháj 'to use'

nâaduu 'interesting to look at' : nâa 'interesting' + duu 'look at'

- e) tít tòo káp means 'to contact or get in touch with' someone.

phǒm ca tít tòo ka câwkhǎon bâan dâj jannaaj  
'How do I get in touch with the owner of the house?'

- f) hàan means 'to be separated by a certain distance'. It is limited to use in sentences referring to the extent of the distance between two points.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

bâan lănnán jùu hàan càak thanǒn jàj 2 kiloo

'That house is 2 kilometers from the main street!'

klaj 'to be far' can replace hàan in constructions like the one above and can be used in other construction in which hàan can not be used, as follows:

Q: krunthêep jùu klaj càak thîinfi máj

'Is Bangkok far from here?'

A: máj klaj mâak kháp 'Not very far.'

Or in sentences where klaj is used with verbs of action:  
kháw tii lûuk klaj mâak 'He hit the ball very far.'

### 32.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Besides the verbs maa (towards the speaker) and paj (away from the speaker) thoorasàp may be followed by other words.

Observe the following examples:

(a) Calling a place

$$\text{phǒm thoo(rasàp)} \begin{cases} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{cases} + \text{thîi} + \text{PLACE}$$

'I telephoned the... (Place).'

(b) Calling a person

$$\text{phǒm thoo(rasàp)} \begin{cases} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{cases} + \begin{cases} \text{hǎa} \\ \text{thýn} \end{cases} + \text{PERSON}$$

'I called (PERSON) up.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Both when calling persons and places other action verbs with thoo may occur. Observe the following:

phǒm thoo	{	paj	ma	thǎam kháw wâa .... 'I called to ask him...'
				bòok kháw wâa .... 'I called to tell him...'
				chuan kháw paj .... 'I called to invite him to go'
				thǎam thîi+ Place.. 'I called to ask at the ...'

### 32.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

bâan wâan hâj châw	A house for rent.
nánsýy hâj àan	A book to read.
náam hâj dýym	Water to drink.
aahǎan hâj thaan	Food to eat.
nǎn hâj duu	A movie to see.
thîi hâj pháak	A place to { stay rest

#### b) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

naj sooj bâan phǒm mi bâan wâan hâj châw  
jùu lǎnnyŋ

On my lane there is a house for rent.

1. ráankaafɛɛ

naj sooj bâan phǒm mi ráankaafɛɛ jùu ráan nyŋ

In my lane there is a coffee shop.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. lǎaj ráan                    naj sɔɔj bāan phǒm mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan  
In the lane I live in there are many coffee shops.
3. thǐi pàaksɔɔj                thǐi pàak sɔɔj mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan  
At the entrance to the lane there are many coffee shops.
4. ráanaahǎan                 thǐi pàak sɔɔj mii ráanaahǎan jùu lǎaj ráan  
At the entrance to the lane there are many restaurants.
5. ráan nɯŋ                     thǐi pàak sɔɔj mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nɯŋ  
At the entrance to the lane there is a restaurant.
6. thǐinân                        thǐinân mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nɯŋ  
At that place there is a restaurant.
7. ráantàtphǒm dii              thǐinân mii ráantàtphǒm dii jùu ráan nɯŋ  
There is a good barber shop there.
8. lǎaj ráan                     thǐinân mii ráantàtphǒm diidi jùu lǎaj ráan  
There are many good barber shops there.

### c) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

kháw khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj

How do they figure the rent?

1. thâwràj

kháw khít khâachâw thâwràj

How much do they charge for the rent?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. dyan la thâwràj      khâw khít khâachâw dyan la thâwra  
How much do they charge per month  
for the rent?
3. dyan la kii phan      khâw khít khâachâw dyan la kii phan bàat  
bàat      How many thousands a month do they  
charge for rent?
4. pii la thâwràj      khâw khít khâachâw pii la thâwràj  
How much a year do they charge for  
the rent?
5. aathít la kii      khâw khít khâachâw aathít la kii bàat  
bàat      How many baht a week do they charge  
for rent?

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. bâan nán pen bâan màj      That house is a new house.
2. krunthêep pen myan jàj      Bangkok is a big city.
3. .thîi myanṭhaj, éppên pen khṣon      Apples are expensive in  
phæṅ      Thailand
4. myanṭhaj pen myan rón      Thailand is a hot country.
5. sawidden pen myan năaw      Sweden is a cold country.
6. sukḥothaj pen myanlŭan kàw      Sukhothai is the old capitol.

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khâw pen khon dii      He's a nice person.
2. khâw pen khon sanùk      He's an enjoyable person.
3. khâw pen khon kèn      He's a competent person.
4. khâw pen khon màj      He's a newcomer.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 7. rew dii    | nice and fast    |
| 8. lék dii    | nice and small   |
| 9. jàj dii    | nice and large   |
| 10. sanùk dii | nice and amusing |

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. rón (kəən) paj  | too hot   |
| 2. nǎaw (kəən) paj | too cold  |
| 3. klaj (kəən) paj | too far   |
| 4. rew (kəən) paj  | too fast  |
| 5. cháa (kəən) paj | too slow  |
| 6. lék (kəən) paj  | too small |
| 7. jàj (kəən) paj  | too big   |
| 8. klâj (kəən) paj | too close |

### i) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

- kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm chǎp  
He drives fast. I like that.
- kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm mâj chǎp  
He drives fast. I don't  
like that.
- kháw phûut cháa.phǒm chǎp  
He speaks slowly. I like  
that.
- bâan khun jùu klâj talàat  
phǒm chǎp  
Your house is near the market.  
I like that.

#### Pattern 2

- kháw khàp rót rew dii  
He drives nice and fast.
- kháw khàp rót rew paj  
He drives too fast.
- kháw phûut cháa dii  
He speaks nice and slow.
- bâankhun jùu klâj talàat dii  
Your house is nice and  
close to the market.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. bân khun jùu klâj talàat                      bân khun jùu klâj talàat  
phôm mâj chôp                                      kæen paj  
Your house is near the                      Your house is too close to  
market. I don't like that.                      the market.
6. bân lănnán jàj.phôm chôp                      bân lănnán jàj dii  
That house is big.                              That house is nice and big.  
I like that.

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khanàat kamlan phoo dii, mâj lék mâj jàj kæen paj  
It's the right size, not too small and not too large.
2. aakàat kamlan phoo dii, mâj rón mâj năaw kæen paj  
The weather is just right, not too warm and not too cold.
3. kháw phûut kamlan phoo dii, mâj rew mâj cháa kæen paj  
He speaks at just the right speed, not too fast and not too slow.
4. raakhaa kamlan phoo dii, mâj phsej mâj thùuk kæen paj  
The price is just right, not too expensive and not too cheap.
5. raw maa thŷj kamlan phoodii, mâj rew mâj cháa  
We arrived at just the right time, not too early and not too late.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>bâan</u> nâajùu	The house is nice to live in.
1. hooten	<u>hooten</u> nâajùu	The hotel is nice to live in.
2. krunthêep	<u>krunthêep</u> nâajùu	Bangkok is nice to live in.
3. myanṭhaj	<u>myanṭhaj</u> nâajùu	Thailand is nice to live in.
4. apháatmênt	<u>apháatmênt</u> nâajùu	The apartment is nice to live in.
5. tàanṭanwàt	<u>tàanṭanwàt</u> nâajùu	Up country (Thailand) is nice to live in.

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (nâa+Verb as Modifier)

1. bâan <u>nâajùu</u>	The house is nice (to live in)
2. aahăan <u>nâathaan</u>	The food looks delicious.
3. rôt khannán <u>nâakhàp</u>	That car is nice to drive.
4. nánŝy lêmnan <u>nâaàan</u>	That book is interesting to read.
5. khǒṅ thfinfi <u>nâasýy</u>	Things here are nice to buy.
6. năṅ rýañní <u>nâaduu</u>	This movie is nice to see.
7. bâan lăṅnán khâachâw mâj phæṅ, <u>nâachâw</u>	That house is not too expensive. It's nice to rent.
8. pàakkaṅ dâamnfi <u>nâacháj</u>	This pen is nice to use.
9. nákrían khonnán <u>nâasǒṅ</u>	That student is nice to teach.
10. nánŝy lêmni <u>nâasǒncaj</u>	That book is interesting.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

11. lékchêe (khambanjaaj) nâafan      The lecture is interesting.  
 12. dèk khonnán nâarâk                      The child is lovable (cute, etc.)

m) Transformation Drill

- |    | <u>Pattern 1</u>                       | <u>Pattern 2</u>        |                                |
|----|--|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | bâanlăŋnán sŭaj<br>phǒm jàak jùu       | bâan lăŋnán nâajùu      | That house is cozy.            |
| 2. | rót khanníi dii<br>phǒm jàak khàp      | rót khanníi nâakhàp     | That car is nice to drive.     |
| 3. | khǒŋ thîiníi thùukdii<br>phǒm jàak sýy | khǒŋ thîiníi nâasýy     | Things here are good buys.     |
| 4. | bâan lăŋnán dii<br>phǒm jàak chăw      | bâan lăŋnán nâachăw     | That is a good house to rent.  |
| 5. | nákrian khonnán kèn<br>phǒm jàak sǒn   | nákrian khonnán nâasǒn  | That student is nice to teach. |
| 6. | nânsýy lênníi dii<br>phǒm jàak àan     | nânsýy lêm níi nâaàan   | That is a readable book.       |
| 7. | nânsýy lêmníi dii<br>phǒm sǒncaj       | nânsýy lêmníi nâasǒncaj | That book is interesting.      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. dèk khonnán dii  
 thúkkhon rák kháw      dèk khonnán nâarák      That child is loveable.  
 (cute, etc.)

### n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǒŋ kwàa	bâan lǎŋnán jùu hànŋ càak thanǒn jàj kǐi kiloo How many kilometers is that house from the main street?	sǒŋ kiloo kwàa  More than two.
2. raaw 2 rǎy 3	sathǎaniĭ rótfaj jùu hànŋ càak (thĭi) nĭi kǐi kiloo How many kilometers is the railroad station from here?	raaw sǒŋ rý sǎam kiloo  About 2 or 3.
3. raaw 150	hǔahĭn jùu hànŋ càak krunthĕep kǐi kiloo How far is Huahin from Bangkok?	raaw róŋj hâasĭp kiloo  About 150 kilometers.
4. 692	ubon jùu hànŋ càak krunthĕep kǐi kiloo How far is Ubon from Bangkok?	hòk róŋj kâawsĭp sǒŋ kiloo  About 692 kilometers.
5. 1129	sǒŋkhlǎa jùu hànŋ càak krunthĕep kǐi kiloo How far is Songkla from Bangkok?	nỳn phan nỳn róŋj jĭisĭp kâaw kiloo  1129 kilometers.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Use of tittò)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw maa thurá araj Why did he come?	kháw maa tittò rýaᅇ bāanchāw He came to inquire about the house for rent.
2. kháw khuan ca tittò kàp khrāj Who should he contact?	kháw khuan ca tittò kàp cāwnāathī khonnán He should contact that official.
3. phǒm ca tittò kàp kháw dāj jaᅇaj How can I get in touch with him?	tittò phāan naajnáa sikhráp Contact (him) through the agent.
4. phǒm ca tittò kàp kháw dāj jaᅇaj How can I get in touch with him?	tittò phāan cāwnāathī sikhráp Through the man in charge.
5. phǒm ca tittò kàp khun dāj jaᅇaj How do I get in touch with you?	nīikhráp, bæthoorasàp phǒm Here is my phone number.
6. khun phǒp kháw bāaᅇ rýplàaw Have you seen him lately?	plàawkhráp, phǒm māj dāj tittò kàp kháw maa naan léᅇw No, I've been out of touch with him for a long time.
7. khun dāj còtmǎaj càak kháw bāaᅇ rýplàaw Have you got any letters from him?	plàaw khráp, phǒm māj dāj tittò kàp kháw maa naan léᅇw No, I haven't been in touch with him for a long time.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. thoo paj thǎam | call and ask    |
| 2. thoo paj bòok  | call and tell   |
| 3. thoo paj chuan | call and invite |
| 4. thoo paj rǎak  | call and summon |
| 5. thoo paj hǎa   | call            |
| 6. thoo paj thǎyŋ | call            |

q) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns 1 and 2 to form pattern 3.)

Patterns 1 and 2

Pattern 3

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. a. phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> hǎa kháw   | phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> <u>thǎam</u> kháw wâa                  |
| b. phǒm thǎam kháw wâa kháw<br>ca paj máj<br>I called him.<br>I asked him whether he<br>was going.     | kháw ca paj máj<br>I called and asked if he<br>was going.          |
| 2. a. phǒm thoo paj hǎa kháw   | phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> <u>bòok</u> kháw wâa                   |
| b. phǒm bòok kháw wâa phǒm<br>paj mâj dâj<br>I called him.<br>I told him I couldn't go.                | phǒm paj mâj dâj<br>I called and told him<br>that I couldn't go.   |
| 3. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw  | phǒm ca <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> <u>chuan</u> kháw                   |
| b. phǒm ca chuan kháw paj<br>sýy khǒŋ<br>I will call him. I will<br>ask him to go shopping<br>with me. | paj sýy khǒŋ<br>I will call and ask him<br>to go shopping with me. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw      phǒm ca thoo paj chuan kháw  
 b. phǒm ca chuan kháw paj      paj thǎaw  
 thǎaw  
 I will call him. I will      I will call and invite  
 invite him to go out (for      him to go out (for fun).  
 fun).
5. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw      phǒm ca thoo paj bòok hǎj kháw  
 b. phǒm ca bòok hǎj kháw maa      maa thǎinǎi  
 thǎinǎi  
 I will call him. I will      I will call and tell him  
 tell him to come over.      to come over.
6. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw      phǒm ca thoo paj thǎam (kháw)  
 b. phǒm ca thǎam kháw rǎan      rǎan bǎanchǎw  
 bǎanchǎw  
 I will call him. I will      I will call and ask him  
 ask him about the house      about the house for rent.  
 for rent.
7. a. phǒm thoo paj thǎi bǎorisàt      phǒm thoo paj rǎak thǎeksǎi  
 thǎeksǎi  
 b. phǒm rǎak thǎeksǎi  
 I called the taxi company.      I called for a cab.  
 I asked for a cab.
8. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm      kháw thoo maa thǎam wǎa phǒm  
 b. kháw thǎam phǒm wǎa phǒm      ca paj mǎaràj  
 ca paj mǎaràj  
 He called me. He asked      He called and asked when  
 me when I was leaving.      I was leaving.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm      kháw thoo maa bòok (phǒm) wâa  
b. kháw bòok phǒm wâa kháw      kháw mâj sabaaj  
mâj sabaaj  
He called me. He told me he was sick.      He called and told me that he was sick.
10. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm      kháw thoo maa chuan phǒm paj  
b. kháw chuan phǒm paj      phátthajaa  
phátthajaa  
He called me. He invited me to go to Pataya.      He called and invited me to go to Pataya.

### 32.4 EXERCISES

1. Ask someone if he has rented a house yet. He indicates he hasn't.
2. Ask if there are any houses for rent in his street. He says there are some.
3. Find out the name of someone's landlord.
4. Find out how much the rent is.
5. Comment on the looks of various buildings in the neighborhood. Indicate that they look nice.
6. Discuss how far apart various buildings in the neighborhood are.
7. Ask someone how you get in touch with someone else. He says call him directly.
8. Ask someone if the house he is living in is big enough for a small family like his.
9. Find out how much the rent is for different houses and apartments, how many hundreds, thousands, etc. per week, month, year.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. Discuss the weather in various seasons at various places.
11. Discuss the manner in which various activities are done and whether you like the way it's done.
12. Indicate that something is just right, not too... or too...
13. Ask questions and answer them about places that are nice to live in, things that are nice to eat, etc.
14. Discuss various telephone calls; who made them to whom for what purpose and at what time.

### 32.5 VOCABULARY

éepên (lûuk, phǎn, baj)	apple
câwkhǎn	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	the man in charge, official
doojtron	directly
hàan	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
kamlan phoodii	just right
kæen paj	too..., in excess
khâachâw	the rent
khambanjaa (khô)	lecture
khanàat	size
khít janṇaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
kiloo	kilometer
lékchêe (khô)	lecture
lûuknǎn (khon)	subordinate (employee)
maa thǎn	to arrive (towards speaker)
paj thǎn	to arrive (away from speaker)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mi.... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or - able, It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds
nâa-àan	interesting to read
nâabyà	boring
nâacháj	nice to use
nâachâw	nice to rent
nâaduu	interesting to look at
nâafaŋ	interesting to listen to
nâajùu	to be cozy, livable
nâakhàp	nice to drive
nâarák	lovable, cute
nâasýy	nice to buy
nâasǒncaj	interesting
nâasǒn	nice to teach
nâathan	to look delicious
naajnâa (khon)	agent
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaksooj	the entrance into a lane
raaj la-iat	details
rák	to love
sooj	lane, narrow street
tittòo / kàp	to contact or get in touch with someone
/ kan	
/ ka-	
thoo (rasàp)	to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) paj	
.... (rasàp) maa	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-THREE

#### 33.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (3)

- A: phǒm dâj jin wâa khun mi bân hâj châw, châj máj khráp I heard you had a house to rent, is that true?
- B: khâ, mi jùu lăaj lăj . khun tōṅkaan bèep năj. chán diaw, sǒṅ chán rý chán khrýṅ Yes, I have several. What kind do you want? One story, two story, or one and a half story.
- A: phǒm jàak dâj bân thîi mi hōṅnōon sǎam hōṅ léew kō mi múnluat thán lăj ca pen sǒṅ chán rý chán khrýṅ kō dâj I want a house with 3 bedrooms and completely screened in. Either two story or one and a half story is O.K.
- B: khun chōp bân tỳk rý máaj khá You want a masonry house or a wooden house?
- A: araj kōdâj khráp Either is O.K.
- B: dichán mi bân sǒṅ chán khrýṅ tỳk khrýṅ máaj jùu lăj nṅ pen bân bèep samǎj màj khâaṅṅōk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon, khâaṅṅaj sǐi khǎaw I have a two story house half masonry and half wood.
- chán bon mi hōṅnōon sǎam hōṅ, hōṅnám nṅ hōṅ It's a modern style house. Outside it's light green; inside it's white.
- chán lân mi hōṅrâpkhèek, hōṅkhrua, hōṅaahǎan ka Upstairs there are 3 bedrooms and one bath.
- hōṅnám ìik hōṅ nṅ Downstairs there is a living room, kitchen, dining room, and another bathroom.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

léswkô, lǎŋ bāan mii ryan  
khoncháj ka hôŋkèpkhǒŋ  
jùu tàan hàak

And in the back of the  
house there are separate  
servant quarters and  
storage space.

A: mii roonróót máj khráp

Is there a carport?

B: mii khâ

Yes, there is.

### 33.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) When kô dâj follows Noun+nǎj, it indicates that either of two or more of the options is acceptable.

A: phǒm khuan ca paj bāan  
khun weelaa nǎj

What time of day should I go  
to your house?

B. weelaa nǎj kô dâj =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{weelaa cháaw } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{weelaa thīan } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{weelaa klaan̄khyyn } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{weelaa .... } \underline{dâj} \end{array} \right.$

'Morning is O.K.'

'Noon is O.K.'

'Nighttime is O.K.'

....

'Any time is all right.'

A: raw ca kin khāaw thīi ráan  
nǎj kan

'Which restaurant shall  
we eat at?'

B: ráan nǎj kô dâj =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ráan níi } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{ráan nán } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{ráan nóon } \underline{dâj} \end{array} \right.$

'This restaurant is O.K.'

'That restaurant is O.K.'

'The restaurant over there  
is O.K.'

'Any one is all right?'

- b) jàak and jàak dâj both mean 'want' or 'would like', but they are used differently.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

jàak is usually followed by a Verb Phrase and only rarely by a Noun Phrase, whereas, jàak dâj is normally followed by a Noun Phrase. Observe the following examples:

- |     | <u>Subject</u> + <u>Verb</u> | + | <u>Complement</u> ( <u>Verb Phrase</u> ) |
|-----|------------------------------|---|--|
| (1) | phǒm    jàak                 |   | paj                                      |
|     | I        want to             |   | go                                       |
| (2) | phom <u>jàak</u>             |   | paj jùu tàançanwàt                       |
|     | I        want to             |   | go and live in the provinces.            |

- |     | <u>Subject</u> + <u>Verb</u> | + | <u>Complement</u> ( <u>Noun Phrase</u> ) |
|-----|------------------------------|---|--|
| (1) | phǒm    jàak dâj             |   | bâan                                     |
|     | I        want                |   | a house.                                 |
| (2) | phǒm <u>jàak dâj</u>         |   | bâan thîi mii sǒŋ hŏnnoŋ                 |
|     | I        want                |   | a house with two bedrooms.               |

c) Following are two of the ways that Noun Compounds may be formed in Thai:

(1) Noun Compound: Noun + Verb Phrase

hŏnrápkhèek 'living room': hŏn 'room' + ráp 'receive' + khèek 'guest'

hŏnnoŋ 'bedroom': hŏn + noŋ 'sleep'

hŏnkèpkhǒŋ 'storeroom': hŏn + kèp 'store' + khǒŋ 'things'

hŏnthaankhâaw 'dining room': hŏn + thaan 'eat' + khâaw 'rice'

(2) Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

hŏnaahǎan 'dining room': hŏn + aahǎan 'food'

(hŏn) khrua 'kitchen': hŏn + khrua 'kitchen'



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

roonrót 'carport': roon 'building'+rót 'vehicle'  
 sŭan d̀òokmáaj 'flower garden': sŭan 'garden'  
 d̀òokmáaj 'flower'  
 sanăam (jâa) 'lawn, yard': sanăam 'yard, field' +  
 jâa 'grass'

Observe the following compounds with b̀eep 'model, type, style':

bâan b̀eep thaj	a Thai style house
bâan b̀eep faràŋ	a Western style house
bâan b̀eep samăj màj	a new style house
bâan b̀eep than samăj	a modern style house
bâan b̀eep chán diaw	a one story house
bâan b̀eep s̀òŋ chán	a two story house
bâan b̀eep chánkrŷŋ	a storey and a half house

### 33.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

I. The following words and phrases are used with houses:

mún	'mosquito net'
múnlúat	'screen' (for window, etc.)
mi } tít }	múnlúat 'to be screened'
mi múnlúat thán lăŋ	'to be completely screened'

2. The following are some of the color words in Thai:

<u>Basic color</u>	<u>Light color</u>	<u>Dark color</u>
<u>green</u>	sŷi khŷaw	sŷi khŷaw òŋ
<u>yellow</u>	sŷi lŷaŋ	sŷi lŷaŋ òŋ
<u>red</u>	sŷi d̀eəŋ	sŷi d̀eəŋ òŋ
<u>brown</u>	sŷi námtaan	sŷi námtaan òŋ
		sŷi khŷaw k̀eə
		sŷi lŷaŋ k̀eə
		sŷi d̀eəŋ k̀eə
		sŷi námtaan k̀eə

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

blue	sǐi námŋøen	sǐi fáa	sǐi námŋøen khêm
<u>navy blue</u>	sǐi kromathâa		krommathâa
<u>white</u>	sǐi khǎaw	... ..	... ..
<u>black</u>	sǐi dam	... ..	... ..

### 33.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun chōp bâan tỳk rý bâan máaj Do you like stucco houses or wood houses?	araj kōdâj  Either.
2. khun chōp bâan bèep nǎj What kind of house do you prefer?	bèep nǎj kōdâj Any kind.
3. khun jàak jùu thfinǎj Where would you like to live?	thfinǎj kōdâj Anywhere.
4. khun jàak pen araj (mǎo, thahǎan, etc) What would you like to be? (doctor, etc.)	pen araj kōdâj (Any occupation) is fine.
5. raw ca paj kan weelaa nǎj What time are we going?	weelaa nǎj kōdâj Any time is all right.
6. chalǎem pen chýy phûuchaaj rý phûujǐn Is 'Chalerm' a man's name or a woman's name?	chýy phûuchaaj kōdâj chýy phûujǐn kōdâj  It could be either a man's name or a woman's name.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	ca pen <u>sǒŋ</u> <u>chán</u> rý <u>chán</u> <u>diaw</u> kǒdâj Either a two story or one story one is O.K.
1. paj, mâj paj	ca <u>paj</u> rý <u>mâj</u> <u>paj</u> kǒdâj It doesn't matter whether we go or not.
2. tham dǎawníi, ìik sák pradǎaw	ca <u>tham dǎawníi</u> rý <u>ìik</u> <u>sák</u> <u>pradǎaw</u> kǒdâj It doesn't make any difference whether you do it now or a little later.
3. hâj phǒm khǒŋj jùu thǎiníi, thǎinóon	ca <u>hâj</u> <u>phǒm</u> <u>khǒŋj</u> <u>jùu</u> <u>thǎiníi</u> rý <u>thǎinóon</u> kǒdâj It's all right with me whether you have me wait here or there.
4. ca pen bâan tỳk, bâan máaj	ca <u>pen</u> <u>bâan</u> tỳk rý <u>bâanmáaj</u> kǒdâj Either a stucco or wooden house is O.K.
5. khon thaj, khon tàanchâat	ca <u>pen</u> <u>khon</u> <u>thaj</u> rý <u>khon</u> <u>tàanchâat</u> kǒdâj It could be either a Thai or a foreigner.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan thîi mii hôṅṅoon</u> <u>săam hōṅ</u> I want a house with three bedrooms.
1. <u>bâan thîi mii múnluat</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan thîi mii múnluat</u> I want a house that is screened.
2. <u>bâan sǒṅ chán</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan sǒṅ chán</u> I want a two story house.
3. <u>bâan bèep thaj</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan bèep thaj</u> I want a Thai style house.
4. <u>rót màj</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>rót màj</u> I want a new car.
5. <u>náṅsǎy lêm nán</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>náṅsǎy lêm nán</u> I want that book.
6. <u>phěnthîi prathêet thaj l phèen</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>phěnthîi prathêet thaj</u> <u>nỳṅ phèen</u> I want a map of Thailand.
7. <u>ṅən mâak mâak</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>ṅən mâak mâak</u> I want (to get) a lot of money.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. fáa	bâan khun (thaa) sǐi araj What color is your house?	sǐi fáa khráp Light blue.
2. dam	rót khan màj khǒŋ khun sǐi araj What color is your new car?	sǐi dam khráp Black.
3. khǎaw	khâaŋŋôk bâan khun thaa sǐi araj What color is your house on the outside?	sǐi khǎaw khráp White.
4. lǎaŋ òn	sǎa khǒŋ kháw sǐi araj What color is his coat?	sǐi lǎaŋ òn khráp Light yellow..
5. námtaan kèe	rǒŋtháw khûu nán sǐi araj What color is that pair of shoes?	sǐi námtaan kèe khráp Dark brown.

### 6. e) Transformation Drill (Form pattern 3 from Patterns 1 and 2.)

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. bâan kháw sǐi khǎaw bâan phǒm sǐi khǎaw òn His house is green. My house is light green.	bâan kháw sǐi kèe kwàa bâan phǒm His house is a darker color than mine.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>2. kâwîi hôŋ khun praphâat<br/>sǐi lǎŋkèe<br/>The chairs in Prapas'<br/>room are dark yellow.</p> <p>kâwîi hôŋ khun prasèet sǐi<br/>lǎŋòon<br/>The chairs in Prasert's<br/>room are light yellow.</p> | <p>kâwîi hôŋ khun praphâat sǐi<br/>kèe kwàa kâwîi hôŋ khun<br/>prasèet<br/>The chairs in Prapas'<br/>room are of darker color<br/>than those in Prasert's<br/>room.</p> |
| <p>3. rôt khan nán sǐi dseŋ<br/>rôt khanníi sǐi dseŋ òon<br/>That car is red; this<br/>car is light red.</p>   | <p>rôt khan nán sǐi kèe kwàa<br/>rôt khan níi<br/>That car is darker colored<br/>than this one.</p>   |
| <p>4. sǎa chót nán sǐi námŋeen<br/>sǎa chót níi sǐi faá<br/>That suit is blue.<br/>This suit is light blue.</p>  | <p>sǎa chót nán kèe kwàa sǎa<br/>chót níi<br/>That suit is darker than<br/>this one.</p>  |
| <p>5. rooŋtháw khûu nán sǐi námtaan<br/>kèe<br/>rooŋtháw khûu níi sǐi námtaan<br/>òon<br/>That pair of shoes is<br/>dark brown.<br/>This pair of shoes is<br/>light brown.</p>                           | <p>rooŋtháw khûu nán sǐi kèe<br/>kwàa rooŋtháw khûu níi<br/>That pair of shoes is<br/>darker in color than<br/>this pair.</p>   |
| <p>6. phóm chòop sǐi kromathâa<br/>kháw chòop sǐi fáa<br/>I like navy blue.<br/>He likes light blue.</p>   | <p>phóm chòop sǐi kèe kwàa<br/>kháw<br/>I like darker colors<br/>than he.</p>   |

Repeat this drill reversing subject and complement and using òon kwàa in place of kèe kwàa.

f) Expansion Drill

1. mii bân

mii bân wân

mii bân wân hâj châw

mii bân bèsp thaj wân hâj châw

mii bân bèsp thaj wân hâj châw jùu

mii bân bèsp thaj than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

mii bân bèsp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

mii bân bèsp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

lǎj nɔj

2. phǒm jàak dâj bân

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon thǐi mii

múnlúat

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon thǐi mii

múnlúat thánlǎj

3. kháw chǒp bân

kháw chǒp bân máaj

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw thǐi mii

hǒnám

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw thǐi mii

hǒnám bèsp than samǎj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. pen bâan  
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw  
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw sǒn chán  
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw sǒn chán khâanǎok thaa sǐi dɛɛn  
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw sǒn chán khâanǎok thaa sǐi dɛɛn,  
khâanǎaj sǐi khǎaw  
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw 2 chán khâanǎok thaa sǐi dɛɛn,  
khâanǎaj sǐi khǎaw lǎn nɔn

g) Response Drill (Use kô dâj in the response.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun jàak jùu krunthêep rý tàanɔanwàt	thǐinǎj kô dâj
2. wanníi raw ca paj thaan khâaw thǐinǎj dii	thǐinǎj kô dâj
3. khun jàak hâj lûuk khun rian araj	araj kô dâj
4. khun ca hâj phǒm paj tɔon nǎj	tɔon nǎj kô dâj
5. phǒm khuan ca hâj araj kháw dii	araj kô dâj
6. ñaan níi ca tɔon sèt mýaraj	mýaraj kô dâj
7. khun ca phûut ka khraj	khraj kô dâj
8. khun jàak hâj khraj paj dâuj	khraj kô dâj

### 33.4 EXERCISES

- a) Find out if someone has a house to rent. He indicates that he has several, and asks you if you want a single story house. You say you want a two story house.
- b) Tell someone that you have a masonry house that is completely screened in. Ask him if he wants to rent it. He says he doesn't.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Ask someone if he has a half masonry and half wood house to rent. He says he has two. You ask him where they are. He says they are on Sukhumwit Lane.
- d) Ask the teacher whether most Thais live in modern style houses or old style, Thai or foreign.
- e) Tell someone you have a house to rent. He asks you what color it is. You say it's white on the outside and light green on the inside.
- f) Describe the house you are now living in terms of:  
1) number of storeys 2) material it is made out of,  
3) the color it is painted inside and out, 4) what rooms it has and whether they are upstairs or down,  
5) whether it has servants' quarters, storage space, a carport, flower garden, and a yard.
- g) Various students ask about the colors of various objects in the classroom; other students respond with the correct answers.
- h) One student asks another questions of the following kind: 'Do you like .... or ....?' to which the response 'Any (kind, thing, where, etc.)' is given.
- i) One student asks another what kind of... he wants. The second responds with a description of the kind he wants.

### 33.5 VOCABULARY

òon	light (color)
bâan máaj (lǎn)	a wooden house
bâan týk (lǎn)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
bèsp	model, type, style
chaan	patio, porch without a roof
chalǎn (chalǎn)	terrace, balcony, porch
chánbon	upstairs
chándiaw	one story

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

chánkhrŷŋ	one and a half storey
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
(sŷi) dam	black
(sŷi) dæŋ	red
dâjjin	to hear
dòokmáaj (dòok)	flowers
fáa (sŷi fáa)	sky, sky blue
hônnaahǎan (hôn)	dining room
hônkèpkhǎon (hôn)	storage, space, storage room
hônkhrua (hôn)	kitchen
hônám (hôn)	bathroom, restroom
hônrapkhèek (hôn)	a living room
jâa	grass
kèe	dark (color)
khǎaw	white
khŷaw	green
khŷawòon	light green
khûu	pair
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
lŷaŋ	yellow
máaj (an, phèen)	wood, stick
mún (lǎŋ)	mosquito net
múnlûat	screen (for window etc.)
(sŷi) námŋeən	blue
(sŷi) námtaan	sugar, brown (as color)
rabiaŋ	corridor
roonróot (roon)	garage
roontháw (khûu, khâaŋ)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

ryankhoncháj (lǎŋ)	servants' quarters
samǎj	time, period, era, age, reign
samǎj màj	modern
sanǎam (jâa)	lawn, yard
sanǎam (sanǎam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sǐi (sǐi)	color
sǒŋchán	two story
sǔan (sǔan)	garden
sǔan dǒŋkmáaj	flower garden
(jùu) tàaŋhàak	to be separate
thaa (sǐi)	to paint, smear, spread (on)
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
tìt (múnlûat)	to be screened
tônkaan	to want, need

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

#### 34.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (4)

- A: pen jaŋŋaj m̄aŋ khá b̄aŋ  
l̄aŋ ní  
khun ch̄oŋ máj
- B: sabaaj m̄aak khráp, b̄oŋriween  
k̄o kw̄aŋ khw̄aŋ dii  
kh̄oŋth̄oŋ, khun khít kh̄aach̄aŋ  
jaŋŋaj khráp
- A: dyan la h̄aaphan bàat.m̄aŋ  
ruam kh̄aanám, kh̄aafaj,  
kh̄aakéss, lé kh̄aathoorasàp  
ph̄uuch̄aŋ t̄oŋ s̄ya eŋ
- B: dyan la h̄aaphan ch̄iaw r̄e khráp  
lót b̄aŋ d̄aŋ máj khráp
- A: h̄aaphan m̄aŋ ph̄eŋ r̄okh̄a  
phr̄ó mi kh̄r̄yaŋryan phr̄óm
- B: mi araj b̄aŋ khráp
- A: mi kh̄róp th̄úk j̄aŋ:  
chút rápkh̄èek, chút thaankh̄aŋ,  
tiaŋ, t̄u, tawkéss, t̄uŋjen lé  
phátlom . kh̄aat t̄e kh̄r̄yaŋ  
pr̄apaak̄aat
- How is this house?
- Do you like it?
- Very nice. The compound is also nice and large.
- Excuse me, how much is the rent?
- 5000 baht a month. Not including water, electricity, gas, and telephone.
- The tenant has to pay those himself.
- Five thousand baht!?  
Could you come down some?
- 5,000 is not too expensive since it's furnished.
- What (furnishings) are there?
- Everything: living room furniture, a dining set, beds, chests of drawers, a gas stove, a refrigerator, and electric fans. The only thing it doesn't have is air conditioning.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>A: khun tŏŋ aw maa een tɛɛ<br/>raw tɪttŏn hŏj frii</p>  | <p>You have to bring your own.<br/>But we'll have it installed<br/>for you free.</p>                        |
| <p>B: tŏŋ tham sŏnjaachŏw kii<br/>pii khráp</p>  | <p>How long a lease is<br/>required?</p>  |
| <p>A: nŏŋ pii khà<br/>càaj nŏn lŭanŏa jaanŏoj<br/>sŏam dyan<br/>khŏthŏot, khun ca jáaj maa<br/>jŭu mŏyaraŋ khá</p> | <p>One year.<br/>(Pay) 3 months rent in<br/>advance.<br/>Excuse me, when would you<br/>like to move in?</p> |
| <p>B: phŏm khŏo prŏksŏa phanrajaa<br/>phŏm kŏon<br/>thŏa tŏkloŋ, ca jáaj maa<br/>dyan nŏa</p>                      | <p>I'd like to talk it over<br/>with my wife first.<br/>If we take it, we'll move<br/>in next month.</p>    |

### 34.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sŏa, òok, and càaj

sŏa (khŏa) means 'to pay for something (a bill, etc.)'  
as an obligation for services rendered.

òok (nŏn) means 'to pay for something, put up the  
money for something, or to stand good for something.'

càaj (nŏn) means 'to pay out, spend, disburse money'.  
It refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a  
specific occasion.

The example below illustrates the usage of sŏa, òok,  
and càaj:

khun cŏon kàp khun cim chŏw bàn jŭu dŭajkan. kháw sŏa  
khŏachŏw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cŏon òok 2000 bàat .  
khun cim òok 2000 bàat. kháw càaj khŏachŏwbân dyan  
la khrán

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

John and Jim rent a house. The cost of the rent is 4000 baht a month. John pays out 2000 and Jim pays out 2000. They make the rent payment once a month.

- b) khróp means 'to be complete' or 'to include all the members of a limited set of items'. Its opposite is khàat 'to be lacking, missing'. khróp like sèt usually occurs as a completive verb, as in

kháw dâj nánsýy khróp thúk lêm He got all the books.  
(nánsýy mi jùu 20 lêm. kháw (There were 20 books.  
dâj nánsýy 20 lêm.) He got 20.)

However, it can occur independently, as in

A: nánsýy khróp máj Are all the books here?  
B: mâj khróp, khàat paj sǒn No, two are missing.  
lêm

- c) When chiaw occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.

hâaphan bàat chiaw rǎ Five thousand baht!?  
(That's quite a lot of money.)

### 34.2 VOCABULARY NOTES (The following are some of the compounds with khâa 'cost, price, fee, value' as the head noun:)

#### Noun: Noun+Noun

khâafaj (fáa) 'electric bill': khâa+faj (fáa) 'electricity'

khâanám 'water bill': khâa+nám 'water'

khâakéss 'gas bill': khâa+késs 'gas'

khâarót 'carfare': khâa+rót 'car, vehicle'

khâa aahǎan 'food (on a bill)': khâa+aahǎan 'food'

khâamǎo 'doctor bill': khâa+mǎo 'doctor'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Noun: Noun+Verb Phrase

khâacâaŋ 'wage': khâa+câaŋ 'hire'

khâachâw 'rent': khâa+châw 'rent'

khâakin 'food': khâa+kin 'eat'

khâajùu 'lodging': khâa+jùu 'reside'

khâathoorasàp 'phone bill': khâa+thoorasàp 'telephone'

khâadænthaaŋ 'travel expenses': khâa+dænthaaŋ 'travel'

### 34.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khâanám, mâj	ruam <u>khâanám</u> máj Does it include the water bill?	mâj ruam khráp  No, it doesn't.
2. khâakées	ruam <u>khâakées</u> máj Does it include the gas bill?	ruam khráp  Yes, it does.
3. khâafaj, mâj	ruam <u>khâafaj</u> máj Does it include the electric bill?	mâj ruam khráp  No, it doesn't.
4. khâathoorasàp	ruam <u>khâathoorasàp</u> máj Does it include the phone bill?	ruam khráp  Yes, it does.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	tôn sǎa <u>khâanám</u> een You have to pay the water bill yourself.
1. khâacâaŋ	tôn sǎa <u>khâacâaŋ</u> een You have to pay the wages yourself.
2. khâamǎo	tôn sǎa <u>khâamǎo</u> een You have to pay the doctor bill yourself.
3. khâadænthaaŋ	tôn sǎa <u>khâadænthaaŋ</u> een You have to pay travel expenses yourself.
4. khâajùu	ttôn sǎa <u>khâajùu</u> een You have to pay for lodging yourself.

### c) Transformation Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. kháw chǎw bǎan dyan la sǎam phan bàat He rents the house for 3000 baht a month.	kháw sǎa khâa chǎwbǎan dyan la 3000 bàat He pays 3000 baht a month for rent.
2. kháw câaŋ khoncháj dyan la hǎa rǎoŋ bàat He hires a servant for 500 baht a month.	kháw sǎa khâacâaŋ khoncháj dyan la 500 bàat He pays 500 baht a month for a servant.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. kháw cháj fajfáa dyan la<br>sìi rój bàat<br>He uses 400 baht worth of<br>electricity per month. | kháw sǎa khâafajfáa dyan la<br>sìi rój bàat<br>He pays a 400 baht electric<br>bill every month. |
| 4. kháw cháj kées dyan la rój<br>bàat<br>He uses 100 baht worth<br>of gas per month.               | kháw sǎa khâakées dyan la<br>rój bàat<br>He pays a 100 baht monthly<br>gas bill.                |
| 5. kháw sýy aahǎan dyan la<br>phan bàat<br>He buys 1000 baht worth<br>of food per month.           | kháw sǎa khâa aahǎan dyan<br>la phan bàat<br>He pays 1000 baht a month<br>for food.             |
| 6. kháw hâj ñen khonkhàp thékssǐi<br>sǐp bàat<br>He gave the taxi driver<br>ten baht.              | kháw sǎa khâa thékssǐi sǐp<br>bàat<br>He paid ten baht for<br>a taxi.                           |

### d) Sentence Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâachâwbâan<br>eeñ. thaañrâatchakaan òok hâj<br>We don't have to pay the<br>rent. | raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâachâwbâan<br>eeñ. <u>thañrâatchakaan òok hâj</u><br>We don't have to pay the<br>rent. The government<br>pays for us.            |
| 2. raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâadænthaan<br>eeñ<br>We don't have to pay for<br>travel expenses.                | raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâadænthaan<br>eeñ. <u>thañrâatchakaan òok hâj</u><br>We don't have to pay for<br>travel expenses. The<br>government pays for us. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>3. raw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâamǎo een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay<br/>doctor bills.</p>   | <p>raw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâamǎo een.<br/><u>thaaŋrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay doctor<br/>bills. The government pays<br/>for us.</p>   |
| <p>4. khâw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâalâwrian<br/>khǎoŋ lûuk een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay<br/>for his children's<br/>schooling.</p> | <p>khâw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâalâwrian<br/>khǎoŋ lûuk een. <u>thaaŋrâatchakaan</u><br/><u>òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay for<br/>his children's schooling.<br/>The government pays for him.</p> |
| <p>5. khâw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâarót een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay<br/>for transportation.</p>                                  | <p>khâw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâarót een<br/><u>thaaŋrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay for<br/>carfare. The government<br/>pays for him.</p>   |

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 2	khun càaj khâachâwbâan wanthîi thâwraj  On what day of the month do you pay the rent?	wanthîi sǎoŋ khráp  The second.
2. 15	khun càaj khâakées wanthîi thâwraj  On what day of the month do you pay the gas bill?	wanthîi 15 khráp  The fifteenth.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |                     |  |   |
|----|---------------------|--|---|
| 3. | 22                  | khun càaj khâanám wan<br>thâwraj<br><br>What day do you pay the<br>water bill on?                            | wanthîi 22 khráp<br><br>The twenty second.      |
| 4. | sùtháaj             | khun càaj khâathoorasàp<br>wanthîi thâwraj<br><br>What day do you pay the<br>telephone bill on?              | wan sùtháaj khráp<br><br>The last day.          |
| 5. | dyan la<br>2 khránj | khun càaj khâacâan khoncháj<br>dyan la kîi khránj<br><br>How many times a month<br>do you pay your servants? | dyan la 2 khránj<br>khráp<br><br>Twice a month. |
| 6. | dyan la<br>khránj   | khun càaj khâafaj dyan la kîi<br>khránj<br><br>How many times a month<br>do you pay the light<br>bill?       | dyan la khránj<br><br>Once a month.             |

f) Transformation Drill (Change from affirmative to negative.)

- |    | <u>Pattern 1</u><br>(affirmative)  | <u>Pattern 2</u><br>(Negative)   |
|----|--|--|
| 1. | bâannîi <u>mii</u> khrýanryan<br><u>khróp</u> thúk jàan<br><br>This house has all<br>kinds of furniture.   | bâannîi <u>mii</u> khrýanryan <u>mâj</u><br><u>khróp</u> (thúk jàan)<br><br>This house doesn't have<br>all kinds of furniture. |
| 2. | phôm <u>dâj</u> nánjsýy <u>khróp</u><br>thúk lêm lésu<br><br>I've got all the books<br>(in a series, etc.) | phôm <u>dâj</u> nánjsýy <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u><br>(thúk lêm)<br><br>I haven't got all the<br>books yet.            |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>3. phǒm <u>tòop</u> khamthǎam <u>khróp</u><br/>thúk khôo<br/>I answered every single<br/>question.</p>    | <p>phǒm <u>tòop</u> khamthǎam <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u><br/>thúk khôo<br/>I didn't answer all the<br/>questions.</p>            |
| <p>4. phǒm <u>dâj</u> nən <u>khróp</u> léew<br/>I've already got all<br/>the money.</p>                      | <p>phǒm <u>dâj</u> nən <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u><br/>I haven't got all the<br/>money yet.</p>                        |
| <p>5. phǒm <u>thamnaan</u> (dâj) <u>khróp</u><br/>nỳn pii léew<br/>I've already worked<br/>for one year.</p> | <p>phǒm <u>thamnaan</u> <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u><br/>(nỳn) pii<br/>I haven't been working<br/>quite a year yet.</p> |

### g) Sentence Expansion Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw tittân khrýanpràpaakaat  
hâj frii

They installed the air  
conditioner free.

2. kháw hâj raw thaan frii

They let us eat free.

#### Pattern 2

- kháw tittân khrýanpràpaakaat  
hâj frii. kháw mâj khít  
khâatittân

They installed the air  
conditioner free. They  
didn't charge for installa-  
tion.

- kháw hâj raw thaan frii  
kháw mâj khít { khâa aahǎan  
                  { thaan

They let us eat free.  
They didn't charge for  
the food.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>3. kháw hâj phǒm jùu frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">They let me stay free.</p>   | <p>kháw hâj phǒm jùu frii</p> <p>kháw mâj khít khâa { châw<br/>                                  jùu</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">They let me stay free.<br/>They didn't charge me<br/>for rent (or lodging).</p> |
| <p>4. kháw thamṇaan hâj phǒm frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He worked for me free.</p>  | <p>kháw thamṇaan hâj phǒm frii</p> <p>kháw mâj khít khâacâaṇ</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He worked, for me free.<br/>He didn't charge for labor.</p>   |
| <p>5. kháw sǒn náṅsǎy hâj phǒm frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He taught me free.</p>  | <p>kháw sǒn náṅsǎy hâj phǒm frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He taught me free. He didn't<br/>charge any tuition fee.</p>  |
| <p>6. thaṅrooṇrian hâj lûuk khǒṇ</p> <p>kháw rian frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school let his child<br/>study there free.</p> | <p>thaṅrooṇrian hâj lûuk khǒṇ</p> <p>kháw rian frii. kháw mâj<br/>khít khâa lâwrian</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school let his child<br/>study free. They didn't<br/>charge him any tuition fee.</p>         |

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. dyan nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mýaraj When will he move in?	dyan nâa Next month.
2. dyan mókharaa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mýaraj When will he move in?	dyan mokharaa In January.
3. aathít nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mýaraj When will he move in?	aathít nâa Next week.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. wancan thîi<br>ca thÿn níi | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mÿaraj<br>When will be move in? | wancan thîi ca<br>thÿnníi<br>Monday of next<br>week. |
| 5. ìik 4 wan                  | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mÿaraj<br>When will he move in? | ìik 4 wan khráp<br><br>In 4 days.                    |
| 6. wansùk nâa                 | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mÿaraj<br>When will he move in? | wansùk nâa<br><br>Next Friday.                       |
| 7. pii nâa                    | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mÿaraj<br>When will be move in? | pii nâa<br><br>Next year.                            |

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |             |   |  |
|-------------|---|--|
|             | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>phanrajaa</u> phǎm kòon | I'd like to talk it over with my wife first.     |
| 1. naaj     | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>naaj</u> phǎm kòon      | I'd like to talk it over with my boss first.     |
| 2. khruu    | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>khruu</u> phǎm kòon     | I'd like to talk it over with my teacher first.  |
| 3. phÿan    | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>phÿan</u> phǎm kòon     | I'd like to talk it over with my friend first.   |
| 4. lûuksǎaw | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>lûuksǎaw</u> phǎm kòon  | I'd like to talk it over with my daughter first. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. nóonchaaj khǎo prýksǎa nóonchaaj phǎm kòon

I'd like to talk it over with my younger brother first.

j) Response Drill (Listen to the description of the situation and answer the questions.)

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun cǎon kàp khun cim chǎw bǎan jùu dūajkan. khǎw sǎa khǎachǎw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cǎon òok 2000 bàat. khun cim òok kǎi bàat</p>	<p>sǎon phan bàat</p>
<p>2. phýan 2 khon khǎwhún<sup>1</sup> kan sýy rǎotjon rakhaa 80,000 bàat. khon nyn òok 10,000 bàat. ìik khon nyn ca òok kǎi bàat</p>	<p>cèt mýyn bàat</p>
<p>3. khun A kàp khun B paj kin aahǎan klaanwan dūajkan. thǎn 2 khon kin aahǎan 50 bàat. khun B mi nǎn hǎj khun A 20 bàat thǎwnán khun A ca tǎn òok ìik kǎi bàat</p>	<p>sǎamsíp bàat</p>
<p>4. phanrajaa chuan sǎami paj sýy sýa hǎj lúuk. raakhaa tua la sǎam síp bàat tǎe phanrajaa mi nǎn hǎa bàat thǎwnán phanrajaa ca hǎj sǎami òok thǎwraj</p>	<p>jǎisíp hǎa bàat</p>
<p>5. khun prasít kàp khun prasàat paj lǎn boolǎn, keem la síp bàat, 6 keem thǎnmòt 60 bàat. thǎn sǎon khon ca òok nǎn khon la kǎi bàat</p>	<p>sǎamsíp bàat</p>

---

1. khǎw hún means 'to team up' or 'to go into partnership'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phŷan sŷi khon nŷn rŷt paj thŷaw tŷanŷanwŷt  
sŷa khŷa nŷmman rŷt 76 bŷat  
thŷn sŷi khon tŷn òk nŷn khon la kŷi bŷat . sŷpkŷaw bŷat

### 34.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another what he pays in rent. When the second responds, he asks him what is included in the price. If some things are not included, he is asked how much they cost. If someone is sharing an apartment or house with another, he is asked how much each pays.
- b) One student asks another if he is renting a furnished house or apartment. If he is, the first asks him what is furnished. The second gives him a list.
- c) One student asks another (1) how many times a month and (2) on what day he must pay the bill for gas, electricity, water, rent, and gas.
- d) One student asks another when he moved into his present apartment or house and when he will move out.

### 34.5 VOCABULARY

òk (nŷn)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
boolŷn	bowling
bŷriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
cŷaj (nŷn)	pay (refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
chút rŷpkhèsk (chút)	living room furniture
chút thaankhŷaw (chút)	a dining set



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)
deanthaan	to travel
frii	to be free (no cost)
jáaj { maa paj	(+ jùu) to move (in)
kwâan	to be broad, wide
kwâan khwǎan	to be wide, to be large, to be roomy
keem (keem)	game (sports)
khâajùu	lodging
khâakées	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatittân	installation fee
khàat (tèe)	to be lacking, missing
khâw hûn	to team up, to go into partnership
khróp	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
khryaan pràpaakàat (khryaan)	air conditioning
khryaanryan (chút)	furniture
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
lûannâa	in advance
phátlom	electric fan
phróom	to be ready, set, completed
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
prasàat	Prasat, male first name

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

pr̀yksǎa	to talk it over, consult
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
sǎnjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sùtháaj	last, final
sǎa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)
tawkéss	a gas stove
tittân	to install
tòkloŋ	to agree (to something)
tûu	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book) cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	a refrigerator

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

#### 35.0 REVIEW DIALOG:

- A: khun dâj bâanchâw rýjaŋ khráp      Have you found a house to rent yet?
- B: kamlaŋ hăa jùu khráp      I'm still looking.  
khun rúucàk khraj thîi mi      Do you know anyone who  
bâan hâj châw bâaŋ máj khráp      has a house to rent?
- A: phôm mi jâat khon nŷŋ      I have a relative.  
kháw bòok phôm wâa kháw mi      He told me he had a house  
bâan hâj châw      house to rent.
- B: jùu thîinăj khráp      Where?
- A: jùu thîi thanŋn phahŋnjoothin      On Phaholyothin Lane 12.  
sooj thîi 12  
pen bâan klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj.      It's not old but it's  
mi khrua bèep samăj màj,      not new.  
rooŋrót léswkô ryan khoncháj      With a modern kitchen,  
a carport, and servants' quarters.
- B: mi kîi hôŋnoŋn khráp      How many bedrooms are there?
- A: săam hôŋnoŋn, mi hôŋnám      Three (and) there are  
2 hôŋ      2 bathrooms.
- B: soojnán thanŋn pen jaŋŋaj      What's the road like  
bâaŋ khráp      in that 'soi'?
- A: dii khráp.nám, faj kô      Good. The water and  
saduak, thoorasàp kô mi      electricity are good.  
There are also telephones  
(in that area).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

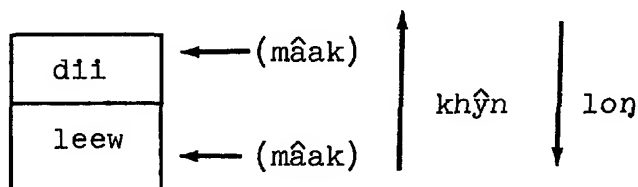
- B: kháw khít khâachâw janŋaj  
khráp  
What does he charge  
for rent?
- A: dyan la sîi phan hâa, mâj  
ruam khâa náam, khâa faj,  
khâa thoorasàp lé khâa kéēs  
phûu châw tōŋ sîa eej  
4,500 per month not  
including water,  
electricity, telephone,  
and gas.  
The tenant has to pay  
those himself.
- B: sîi phan hâa, mâj lôt læj  
rǎkhráp  
4500! Any discount at  
all?
- A: kháw bòok phǒm wâa lôt dâj  
bâan nítnòj  
thâa khun sǒncaj, phǒm ca  
thǎam hâj  
He told me he could  
come down a little.  
If you're interested,  
I'll ask him for you.
- B: khòopkhun mâak khráp  
khun chûaj tittòò hâj  
dûaj nakhráp  
Thank you very much.  
Please inquire about  
it for me.  
dǎawníi bâan dii dii hǎa  
jàak lýakæen  
Nowadays it's extremely  
difficult to find good  
houses.
- A: khráp, phró bâan mii nòj  
lé mii khon tōŋkaan châw  
mâak khÿn  
khâachâw læj phæŋ khÿn  
thúk wan  
Yes, there are few houses  
and more and more people  
needing them.  
As a result, rents are  
getting higher everyday.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 35.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) A large number of stative verbs may be grouped together as binary sets with opposite meanings, such as dii: leew 'good:bad', etc. If a model like the following is drawn with ascending and descending degrees of 'goodness' and 'badness', it will be observed that the change from one to the other is a gradual thing: (i.e. passing through an infinite number of gradations):



Going from leew towards dii would be going up (khÿn) and going the opposite direction would be going down (loŋ).

In this situation dii khÿn 'getting better' indicates that a change is taking place and the direction of the change is towards 'goodness' (upwards). It does not tell us what the situation was (how good or how bad) when the change began or how far it has progressed. A similar situation in reverse is pictured in leew loŋ 'getting worse'.

It would be incorrect to read some deep philosophic meaning into the fact that one stative verb occurs with khÿn and its opposite with loŋ. It is no more significant than the fact that some adjectives occur with 'more' and some with '-er' in the comparative in English. In the following list of binary sets the first member occurs with khÿn; the second with loŋ:

kèn: jêε 'competent: very bad', rew: cháa 'fast: slow', phsɛŋ: thùuk 'expensive: cheap', sa-àat: sòkkapròk 'clean: dirty', rón: nǎaw 'hot: cold', mâak: nóoj 'much, many: little, few', sabaaj: lambàak 'having an easy time: having a hard time', ruaj: con 'rich: poor', nàk: baw 'heavy: light', too, jàj: lék

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

'tall, big: small', jaaw: sân 'long: short', ũan:  
 phǒm 'fat: thin', jâak: nâaj 'hard: easy', sŭn:  
 tîa 'tall: short (of persons)' khǎeŋ: òn 'hard: soft'.

- b) Stative verbs like thùuk, con, etc. that usually occur with lon may occur with khÿn to indicate an intensification of a situation already in existence. Observe the difference in meaning between con lon and con khÿn in the following examples:

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw khøej ruaj dǎawníi kháw mii nœn nǒoj lon He used to be rich. Now he has less money.	kháw con lon He's getting poorer.
2. kháw con jùu léεw dǎawníi kháw con mâak kwàa tèε kòon He was poor already. Now he's poorer than before.	kháw con <u>khÿn</u> He's getting even poorer.

### 35.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
1. aahǎan	<u>khâachâwbâan</u> phœŋ khÿn <u>aahǎan</u> phœŋ khÿn	Rents are going up. Food is getting more expensive.
2. dii	aahǎan <u>dii</u> khÿn	The food is getting better.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3.	aakàat	<u>aakàat</u> dii khÿn	The weather is getting better.
4.	róon	aakàat <u>róon</u> khÿn	The weather is getting hotter.
5.	sabaaaj	aakàat <u>sabaaaj</u> khÿn	The weather is getting more comfortable.
6.	phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> sabaaaj khÿn	I feel better.
7.	kháw	<u>kháw</u> sabaaaj khÿn	He feels better.
8.	kèn	kháw <u>kèn</u> khÿn	He is getting more skillful.
9.	dii	kháw <u>dii</u> khÿn	He is improving.
10.	phaasǎa thaj phǒm	<u>phaasǎa thaj</u> <u>phǒm</u> dii khÿn	My Thai is improving.
11.	roonriian khǒon raw	<u>roonriian</u> <u>khǒon</u> <u>raw</u> dii khÿn	Our school is improving.
12.	jàj	roonriian khǒon raw <u>jàj</u> khÿn	Our school is getting bigger.
13.	suǎj	roonriian khǒon raw <u>suǎj</u> khÿn	Our school is getting more beautiful.
14.	phûujǐn khonnán	<u>phûujǐn</u> <u>khonnán</u> sǔaj khÿn	That lady is getting more beautiful.
15.	dii	phûujǐn khonnán <u>dii</u> khÿn	That lady is getting better.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                                   |  |   |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| 16. | phǒm rúucàk<br>kháw               | <u>phǒm rúucàk</u> <u>kháw</u><br>dii khÿn                     | I'm getting to know<br>him better and better.     |
| 17. | phǒm phûut<br>phaasǎa thaj<br>dâj | <u>phǒm phûut</u><br><u>phaasǎathaj</u> <u>dâj</u><br>dii khÿn | My ability to speak<br>Thai is improving.         |
| 18. | rew                               | phǒm phûut<br>phaasǎathaj dâj<br><u>rew</u> khÿn               | The rate at which I<br>speak Thai is going<br>up. |
| 19. | phǒm khàp rôt                     | <u>phǒm khàp rôt</u> rew<br>khÿn                               | I drive faster (than<br>previously).              |
| 20. | phǒm<br>thamŋaan                  | <u>phǒm thamŋaan</u> rew<br>khÿn                               | I work faster (than<br>previously).               |

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>khâachâwbân</u> thùuk lon	The rent is going down.
1. khǒon	<u>khǒon</u> thùuk lon	Things are getting cheaper.
2. rôt	<u>rôt</u> thùuk lon	Cars are getting cheaper.
3. cháa	rôt <u>cháa</u> lon	The car is slowing down.
4. kháw khàp rôt	<u>kháw khàp rôt</u> cháa lon	He reduced the car's speed.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |              |                                    |                                 |
|----|--------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5. | jêε          | kháw khàp rôt <u>jêε</u> loŋ.      | His driving is getting worse.   |
| 6. | rooŋrian nán | <u>rooŋrian</u> <u>nán</u> jêε loŋ | That school is getting worse.   |
| 7. | lék          | rooŋrian nán <u>lék</u> loŋ        | That school is getting smaller. |

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	dǎawníi, <u>mii</u> <u>khon</u> <u>tônkaan</u> <u>châw</u> <u>bâan</u> mâak khÿn At present, there is an increasing demand for houses.
1. raw mii khruu	dǎawníi, <u>raw</u> <u>mii</u> <u>khruu</u> mâak khÿn At present, we have more and more teachers.
2. phǒm cháj ñen	dǎawníi, <u>phǒm</u> <u>cháj</u> <u>ñen</u> mâak khÿn At present, I spend more and more money.
3. phǒm mii ñen	dǎawníi <u>phǒm</u> <u>mii</u> <u>ñen</u> mâak khÿn At present I have more and more money.
4. phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	dǎawníi, <u>phǒm</u> <u>phûut</u> <u>phaasǎa</u> <u>thaj</u> <u>dâj</u> mâak khÿn At present I can speak more and more.
5. phǒm tôn sýy aahǎan	dǎawníi, <u>phǒm</u> <u>tôn</u> <u>sýy</u> <u>aahǎan</u> mâak khÿn At present I have to buy more and more food.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phǒm thamṇaan      dǎawníi, phǒm thamṇaan mâak khÿn  
At present I work more and more.

### d) Progressive Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- dǎawníi, raw mi nákrian nóoj loṅ  
At present we have fewer students.
1. khruu      dǎawníi raw mi khruu nóoj loṅ.  
At present we have fewer teachers.
2. cǎwnâathîi kèn kèn      dǎawníi, raw mi cǎwnâathîi kèn kèn nóoj loṅ  
At present, we have a smaller number  
of competent staff.
3. mǎo diidii      dǎawníi, raw mi mǎo dii dii nóoj loṅ  
At present we have a lower number  
of good doctors.
4. ṇaan tham      dǎawníi, raw mi ṇaan tham nóoj loṅ  
At present we have less work to do.
5. ṇen      dǎawníi, raw mi ṇen nóoj loṅ  
At present we have less money.
6. dâj      dǎawníi, raw dâj ṇen nóoj loṅ  
At present we earn less money.
7. cháj      dǎawníi, raw cháj ṇen nóoj loṅ  
At present we spend less money.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. dyanníi mýadyankòon khâafaj sǒon  
rǒoj bàat  
dyanníi khâa faj rǒoj  
hâasìp bàat  
Last month, the light bill  
was two hundred baht.  
This month, the light bill  
was 150 baht.  
dyanníi, khâafaj  
thùuk loŋ  
This month the light  
bill has gone down.
5. dǎawníi mýakòonníi, krunthêep mii  
khloon mâak  
dǎawníi, krunthêep mii  
khloon nǒoj  
In the old days, there were  
many canals in Bangkok.  
Nowadays, there are few  
canals in Bangkok.  
dǎawníi, krunthêep mii  
khloon nǒoj loŋ  
Nowadays there are  
fewer canals in Bangkok.
6. dǎawníi mýakòonníi mii khon paj  
thíaw thínân mâak  
dǎaw níi mii khon paj  
thíaw thínân nǒoj  
Formerly, there were many  
people visiting that place.  
Nowadays, there are few  
people visiting that place.  
dǎawníi, mii khon paj  
thíaw thínân nǒoj loŋ  
Nowadays there are  
fewer people visit-  
ing that place.
7. dǎawníi mýakòonníi, bâannán màj  
dǎawníi bâan nán kàw  
That house was new.  
Now that house is old.  
(dǎawníi) bâannán kàw  
loŋ  
That house has gotten  
older.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. dǎawníi      mǎyakòon níi, bāanchâw  
hǎa mâj jâak      dǎawníi, bāanchâw hǎa  
dǎawníi, bāanchâw hǎa      jâak khÿn  
jâak  
Formerly it was not  
difficult to find a  
house.  
At present it is  
difficult to find  
a house.
9. dǎaw      mǎyakòon níi, thěwníi  
mâj sadùak      dǎaw níi, thěwníi sadùak  
dǎawníi, thěwníi sadùak      khÿn  
Formerly this area wa  
was inconvenient.  
At present this area  
is convenient.
10. dǎawníi      mǎyakòon níi, khon thǎi  
còp mahǎawítthajaalaj      dǎawníi, khon thǎi còp  
mii nóoj      mahǎawítthajaalaj mii  
dǎawníi, khon thǎi còp      mâak khÿn  
mahǎawítthajaalaj mii  
mâak  
Formerly there were  
few university  
graduates.  
At present there are  
a lot of university  
graduates.
- At present it is in-  
creasingly difficult  
to find a house.
- At present this area  
is more convenient.
- At present the number  
of university graduates  
is increasing.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- f) Transformation Drill (Form sentences with the cue words and khÿn or kwàa as indicated by the situation.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Resultant Pattern</u>
1. a. rón hot	1. mÿa waanní aakàat rón  2. wanní aakàat rón mâak  Yesterday, it was hot.  Today, it is very hot.	wanní	wanní aakàat rón <u>khÿn</u>  Today it's hotter.
b. wanní mÿawaanní Today Yesterday		wanní	wanní aakàat rón <u>kwàa</u> mÿawaanní  Today, the weather is hotter than yesterday.
2. a. phɛɛŋ expensive	1. mÿakòonní khâachâw bân dyan la 2000 bàat  2. dÿawní khâachâwbân dyan la 4000 bàat  Formerly, the rent was 2,000 baht a month.  Today, the rent is 2,000 baht a month.	dÿawní	dÿawní khâachâwbân phɛɛŋ <u>khÿn</u>  Today the rent is more expensive.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<p>b. thùuk cheap</p>	<p>1. khâachâwbâan dǎawníi mǎa kòonníi</p> <p>2. khâachâwbâan dǎawníi</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">the rent in those days</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">the rent today</p>	<p>dǎawníi khâachâwbâan phɛɛŋ <u>kwàa</u> mǎakòonníi</p> <p>Today the rent is cheaper than in those days.</p>
<p>3. a. nâajùu nice (to live)</p>	<p>1. mǎakòonníi dǎawníi thěwníi mǎj nâajùu</p> <p>2. dǎawníi, thěwníi nâajùu</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Formerly, this area was not nice to live in.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Today, this area is nice to live in.</p>	<p>dǎawníi, thěwníi nâajùu <u>khÿn</u></p> <p>Today, this area is nicer to live in.</p>
<p>b. mǎakòonníi dǎawníi formerly today</p>	<p style="padding-left: 40px;">dǎawníi</p>	<p>dǎawníi, thěwníi nâajùu (khÿn) <u>kwàa</u> mǎakòon</p> <p>Today, this area is nicer than in those days.</p>
<p>4. a. dii good</p>	<p>1. mǎakòonníi, dǎawníi thanǒn mǎj dii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Formerly the road was bad.</p>	<p>dǎawníi, thanǒn dii <u>khÿn</u></p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. dǎawnǐi, thanǎn  
dii

At present the  
road is good.

b. mǎyakðǎnnǐi  
dǎawnǐi  
formerly,  
now

dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi, thanǎn  
dii (khǎn) kwàa  
mǎyakðǎnnǐi

Now the road is  
better than  
formerly

5. a. mií mǎak  
there are  
a lot

1. mǎyakðǎnnǐi, dǎawnǐi  
thǎinǐi mií faràᅇ nǎj

2. dǎawnǐi, thǎinǐi  
mií faràᅇ mǎak

Formerly there  
were few  
Westerners here.

Now there are a  
lot of Westerners  
here.

dǎawnǐi, thǎinǐi  
mií faràᅇ mǎak  
khǎn

Now, there are  
more Westerners  
here.

b. mǎyakðǎnnǐi,  
dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi, thǎinǐi  
mií faràᅇ mǎak  
(khǎn) kwàa  
mǎyakðǎnnǐi

There are more  
Westerners now  
than those days.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Sentence Formation Drill

Using the information given in the cue sentences form sentences with lon or khÿn so as to illustrate the type of change underway.

#### Cue sentences

#### Pattern

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. a. kháw khæj ruaj<br>dĭawníi kháw mi<br>nən nóoj lon<br>He used to be rich.<br>Now he has less money.                                      | kháw con <u>lon</u><br><br><br><br>He's getting poorer.                    |
| b. kháw con jùu léew<br>dĭawníi kháw con mâak kwàa<br>tèe kòon<br>He was poor.<br>Now he is poorer than<br>he was before.                     | kháw con <u>khÿn</u><br><br><br><br>He's getting even poorer.              |
| 2. a. khǎon khæj phæe<br>dĭawníi khǎon mi<br>raakhaa nóoj lon<br>Things used to be<br>expensive.<br>Now the price of things<br>is going down. | khǎon thùuk <u>lon</u><br><br><br><br>Things are getting<br>cheaper.       |
| b. khǎon thùuk jùu léew<br>dĭawníi thùuk kwàa<br>tèe kòon<br>Things were already<br>cheap.<br>Now things are cheaper<br>than before.          | khǎon thùuk <u>khÿn</u><br><br><br><br>Things are getting<br>even cheaper. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. a. kháw khəej pen khon dii      kháw leew lon  
dǎawníi kháw mâj dii  
He used to be a good person.  
Now he isn't good.      He's turning bad.
- b. kháw pen khon mâj dii      kháw leew khÿn  
dǎawníi kháw mâj dii mâak  
kwàa kàw  
He wasn't a good person.      He's getting even worse.  
Now he's worse than formerly.
4. a. aakàat khəej rón      aakàat nǎaw lon  
dǎawníi aakàat plian pen nǎaw  
The weather was hot.      It's getting colder.  
Now it has turned cold.
- b. mÿawaanníi aakàat nǎaw  
wanníi aakàat nǎaw kwàa      aakàat nǎaw khÿn  
mÿawaanníi  
Yesterday it was cold.  
Today it's colder than it was yesterday.      The weather's becoming even colder.
5. a. phûujÿn khonnán khəej      kháw phǒm lon  
uân mâak  
dǎawníi kháw lót námnaek  
dâj mâak  
That woman used to be fat.  
Now she has lost a lot of weight.      She's getting thinner.



35.3 BASIC EPISODE

khun coon wájt pen khâarâatchakaan krasuan tãanprathêet  
thîi sathãanthûut ameerikan. weelaanîi kháw pháak jùu thîi  
roonrëem raamâa. kháw hãa bãanchãw maa lãaj wan léew.

kháw mâj jàak jùu aphaatmênt phró kháw chõop jùu bãan mâak  
kwâa. kháw jàak dâj bãan jàjjàj phró khrõopkhrua khõonkháw  
mii dûajkan hãa khon, khyy khun coon, phanrajaa lé lûuk 3  
khon.

bãan diidii naj krunthêep hãa jâak lé khâachãw kô phëe  
lýakëen. khun coon dâj khâachãwbãan dyan la 5000 bàat, tèe  
bãan thîi kháw paj duu wáj khâachãw jãan tãam dyan la hãa  
phan hãa. dïawnîi , krunthêep khâachãwbãan phëe mâak phró  
mii khon tõnkaan chãw mâak khÿn.

wannîi pen wansãw, khun coon paj hãa naajnãa. naajnãa phaa  
kháw paj duu bãan lãnnÿn thîi thanõn sùkhũmwít sooj thîi jîi  
síp cèt. bãannîi pen bãan klaanjàw klaanmàj. pen tÿk sõon chán.  
mii hõn sãam hõn, hõnnám 2 hõn. mii hõn rápkhèek jàj,  
hõnaahãan lé hõnkhrua bèep than samãj. mii roonrót jùu tít  
kàp bãan. lãn bãan mii hõn kèp khõon lé ryan khoncháj.  
nãabãan mii sanãam kwãan.

cãwkhõonbãan khít khâachãw dyan la hãa phan hãa róoj bàat  
tè kháw lót hãj khun coon hãaróoj bàat. pen hãaphan bàat  
thûan. kháw hãj khun coon tham sãnjaachãw nÿn pii kàp càaj  
nëen lûaannãa hãj kháw sãam dyan. khâachãw hãaphan bàat níi  
ruam thán khrÿanryan. kháw mii khrÿanryan phróm thúkjàan  
khàat tè khrÿanpràpaakàat. sùan khãanám, khãafaj, khãathoorasàp,  
lé khãakéss khun coon tõon sía ðeñ. khun coon bòok cãwkhõonbãan  
wãa kháw ca jáaj paj jùu bãan màj wanthîi nÿn dyan thanwaakhom.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Translation of the Episode.

Mr. John White is a State Department official. He has just arrived in Thailand. He came to work at the American Embassy. At present, he is staying at the Rama Hotel. He has been looking for a house for many days. He doesn't want to live in an apartment because he prefers a house. He wants a big house because there are five persons in his family: John, his wife and three children.

Good houses are hard to find and the rent is too expensive. John gets 5000 Baht a month for his housing allowance, but the houses he has looked at are at least 5,500 Baht a month. Today rent in Bangkok is very high because there are more demands.

Today is Saturday. John goes to see a house agent. The house agent takes him to look at a house on Sukumvit Lane 27. This house is not too old, nor brand new. It is a two-story brick house with three bedrooms, and two bathrooms. There is a big living room, dining room and a modern kitchen. There is a carport adjoining the house. At the back of the house, there is a storage room and servants' quarter. There is a big lawn in front of the house.

The landlord charged 5,500 Baht a month for the rent but for John he came down to 5,000 Baht, which is 500 Baht exactly. He had John sign a lease for one year and pay him three months rent in advance. This 5000 Baht includes furniture. The house is completely furnished except for air conditioners. As for water, electricity, telephone and gas, John has to pay them himself. John told the landlord that he was going to move into the new house on December 1.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 35.4 QUESTIONS ON THE EPISODE

Answer the following questions according to the story given:

1. khun coon thamnaan araj  
What does John do (for a living)?
2. khaw maa juu myanthaj daj naan rýjan  
Has he been in Thailand long?
3. weelaani khaw phak juu thfinaj  
Where is he staying now?
4. thammaj khun coon ton haa banchaw  
Why does he have to look for a house?
5. thammaj khun coon thyn maj jaak juu aphatmet  
Why doesn't he want to live in an apartment?
6. thammaj khun coon thyn tonkaan ban jajaj  
Why does John need a rather large house?
7. thammaj khun coon thyn ton haa banchaw juu laaj wan.  
Why did he have to spend many days looking for a home?
8. khun coon daj khachawban maak phoo thi ca chaw ban  
dyan la haa phan haa rooj bat maj  
Does he get enough housing allowance to pay for  
the rent at 5,500 per month?
9. ban thi khun coon toklon chaw juu thfinaj  
Where is the house John agrees to rent?
10. bannan pen ban bepnaj  
What kind of house is it?  
(a) sorchan rý chandaw Two or one-story?  
(b) tik rý maj Masonry or wooden?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- (c) mii hōŋ araj bâaŋ                      What rooms are there?  
d (d) mii kii hōŋnōon                      How many bedrooms?  
(e) pen bâanlék rý bâanjàj              A small or big house?  
(f) mii roonrót máj.jùu thīnǎj      Any carport? Where?
11. cǎwkhōŋbâan khít khâachâw dyan la thâwràj  
How much does the landlord charge for the rent?
12. bâannán mii khryāŋryan máj . mii araj bâaŋ.  
Is it furnished? What do they have for furniture?
- 13.. khâachâw hâaphán bàat níi ruam thán khâanám khâafaj  
dûaj rýplàaw  
Does this 5,000 Baht rent include water and  
electricity?
14. khun cōon tham sǎnjaa châw kii pii  
How long a lease did John sign?
15. kháw tōŋ hâj ñen lûaŋnâa kii dyan.  
How much deposit does he have to pay?
16. kháw ca jàaj paj jùu bâanmàj mýaraj  
When is the going to move into the new house?

### 35.5 EXERCISES

- a) Suppose one student is Mr. John White, another a house agent. Have the two students carry on a conversation based on the story given.
- b) Suppose one student is Mr. Smith, a bachelor, looking for a one bedroom apartment, another student is a landlord. Have them carry on a conversation using the sentences they have learned.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Discuss situations that are in a state of flux whether getting better, worse, harder, etc. For example:
1. Someone is richer or poorer than he used to be.
  2. Some things are cheaper or more expensive than formerly.
  3. The weather is colder or hotter than it was 2 months ago or will be 3 months hence.
  4. Someone's relatives are much fatter or thinner than they were at some time in the past or will be at some time in the future.
- d) Compare various people or things in terms of physical size. For example:

phôo phôm sũun kwàa mêe l fút 'My father's a foot  
taller than my mother.'

### 35.6 VOCABULARY

òon	to be soft, tender
ûan	to be fat, stout
baw	to be light (in weight)
jàj	to be large, big, major, main
khěŋ	to be hard, firm, strong, stiff
klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj	not old but not new
lambàak	to be hard, difficult, troublesome
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
lỹakæen	too..., so...
mâak	to be much, many; a lot; very
năaw	to be colder (weather, person)
nàk	to be heavy; hard (of work); severely, very



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

ηâaj	to be simple, easy
phǒm	to be thin (not fat)
sa-àat	to be clean
sân	to be short (in length)
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sǔn	to be high, tall
tîa	to be short, low (in height)
wájt	White (English name)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

	nýanǎa, thon mâak, lé mâj khôoj jáp	It's heavy, very durable, and is wrinkle-resistant
khonsýykhǒŋ:	sák nám dâj máj khráp	Is it washable?
khonkhǎaj:	dâj khà tè sák hêeŋ dii kwàa	Yes, but it's better to have it dry cleaned.
khonsýykhǒŋ:	sák léew, hòt máj khráp	Once it's washed, does it shrink?
khonkhǎaj:	nítnòoj khà	A little.

### 36.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) jàan means 'kind, type (with emphasis on quality)'.

Observe the following example:

phâamǎj mii lǎaj jàan. mii jàan dii, jàan mâj dii  
jàan thùuk , jàan phêeŋ , jàan nâakwâaŋ jàan nâakhêep

There are many kinds of Thai silk. There is  
the good kind and the bad kind, the cheap kind  
and the expensive kind, the wide kind, the  
narrow kind.

- b) chanít means 'kind' or 'type' with emphasis on special  
characteristics, such as 'being colorfast' (chanít  
sǐi mâj tòk), or 'being made of wood' (chanít tham  
dûaj máaj), or 'having long grains (as of rice)  
(chanít met jaaw), etc.

phâa mii lǎaj chanít: mii phâamǎj, phâafâaj, phâanajlôn  
lé ýynýyn

There are many kinds of cloth: silk, cotton,  
nylon, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 36.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### a) Types of Comparison

##### 1. Equality.

thâw + kàp / kan 'equal, same in size or quantity'  
may occur (1) in construction with stative verbs,  
or (2) independently.

##### a) khǒn sǒn jàanníi phɛɛn thâwkan

These two things are equally expensive.  
(with stative verb phɛɛn)

##### khâw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj dii thâw kàp khun

He speaks Thai as well as you do.  
(with stative verb dii)

##### b) Independently (as main verb in the sentence)

##### phâa sǒn jàanníi raakhaa thâw kan

These two fabrics are of the same price.

##### bân lǎnnán khâachâw thâw kàp bân lǎnníi

The rent for that house is the same as for  
this one.

##### 2. Inequality.

kwàa 'more (than), to a greater extent' occurs in  
construction with stative Verbs.

##### khâw khàp rôt rew kwàa phǒm.

He drives faster  
than I do.

##### ráanníi dii kwàa ráannóon

This shop is better  
than that one.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 3. Equality and Inequality compared

a) phǒm chǒp khun thâw (thâw) kàp kháw  
I like you as much as (I like) him.

phǒm chǒp khun thâw (thâw) kàp (thîi) kháw  
chǒp (khun)

I like you as much as he (likes you).

b) phǒm chǒp khun mâak kwàa kháw  
I like you more than (I like) him.

phǒm chǒp khun mâak kwàa thîi kháw chǒp khun  
I like you more than he (likes you).

### 4. Superlative.

thîisùt 'most, -est' occurs in construction with  
stative verbs.

nànsǎy lêmní dii thîisùt      This book is the best.

kháw pen nákriian thîi kèn      He is the best student  
thîisùt náj chán                      in the class.

### b) Equational sentences.

phâa (jàan pèetsìp bàat) nâakwâan  
Cloth (of the 80 baht kind.) (is) wide.

This type of sentence is called an equational sentence.  
It is very common in Thai. Other examples are:

phâaní nâakhêp                      This cloth is narrow.

bâan lǎnnán khâachâw phsɛn      The rent for that house  
is high.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Formation of Noun Phrases derived from this type of sentence is also common.

<u>phâa nâakwâaŋ</u>	The wide material.
<u>rôt raakhaa phœŋ</u>	Expensive cars.

c) NOUN PHRASE	}	+ <u>dii kwàa</u>	'It's better to...!'
VERB PHRASE			

dii kwàa may have either Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase as subject. Below are some examples with Verb Phrase as subject:

<u>sákhêŋ dii kwàa</u>	It's better to dry clean (it).
( <u>phôm wâa, khun</u> ) <u>jùu bân dii kwàa</u>	(I think) it's better for (you) to stay home.

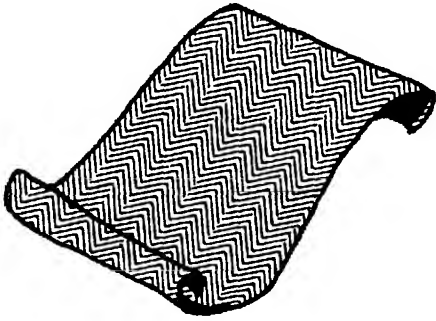
### 36.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill (Use jàaŋ with the stative verb and the noun to form a Noun Phrase.)

#### Cues

#### Noun Phrase

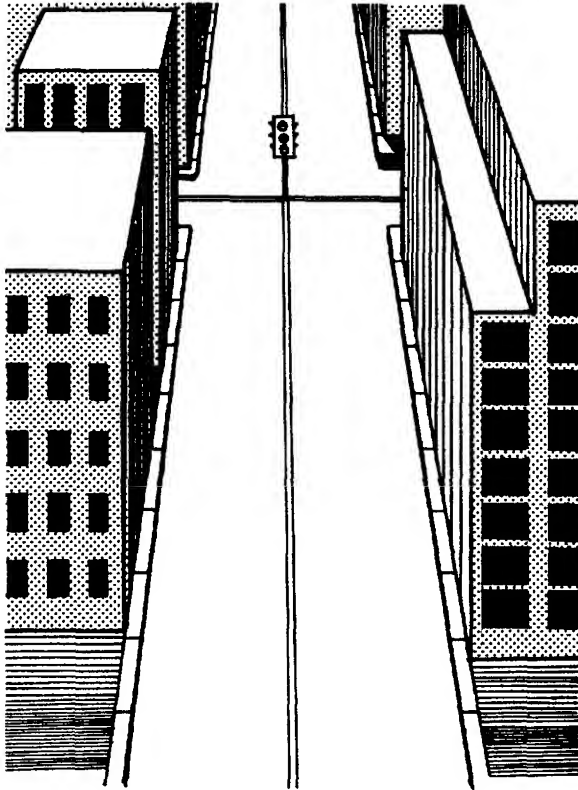
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. dii, phâamǎj<br/>good, silk cloth</p> <p>2. phœŋ, phátlom<br/>expensive, fan</p> <p>3. dii, tûujen<br/>good, refrigerator</p> <p>4. thùuk, fœnitêe<br/>cheap, furniture</p> | <p>phâamǎj jàaŋ dii<br/>good quality silk cloth</p> <p>phátlom jàaŋ phœŋ<br/>Expensive fans.</p> <p>tûujen jàaŋ dii<br/>Good refrigerators.</p> <p>fœnitêe jàaŋ thùuk<br/>Cheap furniture.</p> |
|---|--|



phâa ní nâakwâaŋ



phâa ní nâakhêeɸ



thanŏn sǎaj ní kwâaŋ



thanŏn sǎaj ní khêeɸ





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Transformation Drill

Combine the sentences in patterns 1, 2, 3 with the cue to form the resultant pattern, then repeat the operation using a stative verb with opposite meaning (the second cue).

<u>Patterns 1, 2, 3</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Resultant Pattern</u>
1. a. phâamăj jàanńí mâj dii b. phâamăj jàanńán dii c. phâamăj jàanńóon dii mâak	<u>dii</u>	phâamăj jàanńóon dii thîisùt
	<u>leew</u>	phâamăj jàanńí leew thîisùt
This kind of silk is not good.		The other kind of silk is the best.
That kind of silk is good.		
That other kind of silk is the best.		This kind of silk is the worst in quality.
2. a. samùt jàanńí mâj dii b. samùt jàanńán dii c. samùt jàanńóon dii mâak	<u>dii</u>	samùt jàanńóon dii thîisùt
	<u>leew</u>	samùt jàanńí leew thîisùt
This notebook is not good.		The notebook over there is the best.
That notebook is good.		
The notebook over there is very good.		This notebook is the worst.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. a. aahǎan thǎinǎi phɛɛŋ  
 b. aahǎan thǎinǎn phɛɛŋ mâak  
 c. aahǎa thǎinôn phɛɛŋ lýa

phɛɛŋ

aahǎan thǎinôn phɛɛŋ  
thǎisùt

thùuk

aahǎan thǎinǎi thùuk  
thǎisùt

The food here is  
expensive.

The food there is more  
expensive.

The food over there is  
very, very expensive.

The food over there  
is the most expensive.

The food here is  
the cheapest.

4. a. tỳk lǎnǎi mâj jàj  
 b. tỳk lǎnǎn jàj  
 c. tỳk lǎnón jàj mâak

jàj

tỳk lǎnón jàj thǎisùt

lék

tỳk lǎnǎi lék thǎisùt

This building is not  
large.

That building is large.

The building over there  
is very large.

The building over  
there is the largest.

This building is  
the smallest.

5. a. nǎnsýyphim thaj mâj nǎa  
 b. nǎnsýyphim wanaathít nǎa  
 c. nǎnsýyphim niw jóok nǎa  
 mâak

nǎa

nǎnsýyphim niwjóok  
nǎa thǎisùt

baan

nǎnsýyphim thaj baan  
thǎisùt

Thai newspapers are  
not thick.

The N.Y. paper is  
the thickest.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

The Sunday paper is  
thick.

The N.Y. paper is very  
thick.

The Thai paper is  
the thinnest.

6. a. thanǒn carəənkrun̄ māj kwâan̄

b. thanǒn phétburii kwâan̄

c. thanǒn mĩtraphâap kwâan̄  
mâak

kwâan̄

thanǒn mĩtraphâap  
kwâan̄ thĩisùt

khêep

thanǒn carəənkrun̄  
khêep thĩisùt

Charoen Krung is not  
wide.

Phetburi Street is wide.

Friendship Highway is  
very wide.

Friendship Highway  
is the widest.

Charoenkrung Street  
is the narrowest.

7. a. khun prasit rian māj kèn̄

b. khun prasàat rian kèn̄

c. khun prasǒŋ rian kèn̄ mâak

kèn̄

khun prasǒŋ rian kèn̄  
thĩisùt

jêe

khun prasit rian jêe  
thĩisùt

Prasit is not a good  
student.

Prasat is a good student.

Prasong is a very good  
student.

Prasong is the  
best student.

Prasit is the worst  
student.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. a. khâa rôttraan mâj phæŋ

b. khâa rôtme phæŋ

c. khâa rôt théeksîi phæŋ  
mâak

phæŋ

khâa rôt théeksîi  
phæŋ thîisùt

thùuk

khâa rôttraan thùuk  
thîisùt

Street car fare is cheap.

Bus fare is expensive.

Taxi fare is very  
expensive.

Taxi fare is the  
most expensive.

Street car fare is  
the cheapest.

9. a. sukhôothaj khæj pen  
mÿanlŭan mÿa pii phoo  
sŏo 1800

b. ajuthajaa khæj pen  
mÿanlŭan mÿa pii  
phoo sŏo 1893.

c. krunthêep pen mÿanlŭan  
mÿa pii phoo sŏo 2325

kàw

sukhôothaj pen mÿanlŭan  
kàw thîisùt

màj

krunthêep pen mÿanlŭan  
màj thîisùt

Sukhothaj was the capitol  
up to B.E. 1800.

Ayuthaya was the capitol  
in B.E. 1893.

Bangkok is the capitol  
since B.E. 2325.

Suthoothai is the  
oldest capitol.

Bangkok is the  
newest capitol.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Sentence Construction Drill

(Compose Questions using the cue words and thîisùt)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. mahăawítthajaalaj, kàw, naj prathêet thaj  university, to be old, in Thailand	mahăawítthajaalaj araj pen mahăawítthajaalaj thîi kàw thîisùt naj prathêet thaj  What university is the old- est in Thailand?
2. caṇwàt, mii khonjùu mâak naj prathêet thaj  Province. To have many people living in (it), in Thailand.	caṇwàt araj pen caṇwàt thîi mii khonjùu mâak thîisùt  What province has the larg- est population in Thailand?
3. caṇwàt, jùu klaj càak krunthêep mâak  Province. (Very) far from Bangkok	caṇwàt araj pen caṇwàt thîi jùu klaj càak krunthêep mâak thîisùt  What province is the farth- est province from Bangkok?
4. nánsÿyphim, mii khon àan mâak, naj prathêet thaj  Newspaper, to have many readers. In Thailand	nánsÿyphim araj pen nánsÿy phim thîi mii khon àan mâak thîisùt naj prathêet thaj  What newspaper has the larg- est number of readers in Thailand?
5. krasuan, jàj, naj prathêet thaj  Ministry. Big. In Thailand	krasuan araj pen krasuan thîi jàj thîisùt naj prathêet thaj  What ministry is the big- gest ministry in Thailand?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. prathêet, nâajùu  
naj lôok

Country. Nice to live  
in. In the world

prathêet araj năj pen  
prathêet thîi nâajùu  
thîisùt naj lôok

What country is the nicest  
country to live in this  
world?

e) Transformation Drill

(Change patterns 1 and 2  
into a sentence of comparison  
using the cue and thâw.)

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. phâa jàanán thùuk jàanóon phseŋ	raakhaa Price	phâa sǒŋ jàan nán  raakhaa mâj thâwkan
That kind of fabric is cheap. That kind of fabric over there is expensive.		The prices of those two fabrics are not equal.
2. bâan lănnán khâachâw phseŋ lănnóon thùuk	khâachâw	bâan sǒŋ lăŋ nán khâachâw mâj thâwkan
The rent for that house is high. The rent for that house (over there) is cheap.		The rents for those two houses are not equal.
3. pàakkaa dâamnán thùuk dâamní phseŋ	raakhaa	pàakkaa sǒŋ dâam nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan
That pen is cheap. This pen is expensive.		The prices of those two pens are not equal.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>4. phâa jàaṅṅoon nâakwâaṅ<br/>phâa jàaṅṅán nâakhêep</p> <p>That kind of fabric<br/>(over there) is wide.<br/>That fabric is narrow.</p>                         | <p>nâakwâaṅ<br/>Width (of<br/>the fabric)</p>         | <p>phâa sǒṅ jàaṅ nán<br/>nâa kwâaṅ mâj<br/>thâwkan.</p> <p>Those two fabrics<br/>are not equal in<br/>width.</p> |
| <p>5. khâw dâj khâachâw<br/>bâan nõṅj<br/>phǒm dâj khâa<br/>châwbâan mâak</p> <p>He gets a small<br/>housing allowance.<br/>I get a big housing<br/>allowance.</p> | <p>khâa<br/>châwbâan</p> <p>Housing<br/>allowance</p> | <p>raw dâj<br/>khâachâwbâan<br/>mâj thâwkan</p> <p>We get different sized<br/>housing allowances.</p>            |

### f) Transformation Drill

- | <u>Pattern 1</u>   | <u>Cue</u>                             | <u>Pattern 1</u>  |
|--|--|---|
| <p>1. náṅsýy sǒṅlêm níi<br/>dii thâwkan</p> <p>These two books are<br/>equally good.</p>                     | <p>náṅsýy lêmṅán<br/>náṅsýy lêmníi</p> | <p>náṅsýy lêmṅán dii<br/>thâwkáp náṅsýy<br/>lêmníi</p> <p>That book is as good<br/>as this one.</p>                           |
| <p>2. phâa sǒṅ jàaṅṅán<br/>raakhaa thâwkan</p> <p>Those two kinds of<br/>fabrics are equal<br/>in price.</p> | <p>phâa jàaṅṅán<br/>phâa jàaṅṅíi</p>   | <p>phâa jàaṅṅán<br/>raakhaa thâw ka<br/>jàaṅṅíi</p> <p>The price of that<br/>fabric is the same<br/>as equal to this one.</p> |
| <p>3. khǒṅ thîinân ka<br/>thîinîi phæṅ thâwkan</p> <p>Things here and there<br/>are equally expensive.</p>   | <p>khǒṅ thîinân<br/>khǒṅ thîinîi</p>   | <p>khǒṅ thîinân phæṅ<br/>thâw ka khǒṅ thîinîi</p> <p>Things there are as<br/>expensive as things<br/>here.</p>                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>4. phûujǐn sǒn khon nán<br/>suǎj thâwkan</p> <p>Those two girls are<br/>equally pretty.</p>  | <p>phûujǐn khonníi phûujǐn khonníi<br/>phûujǐn khonnán suǎj thâwkap<br/>phûujǐn khonnán</p> <p>This girl is as<br/>pretty as that one.</p> |   |
| <p>5. khun cǒn ka khun fréť<br/>rian kèn thâwkan</p> <p>John and Fred are<br/>equally good (students).</p>  | <p>khun cǒn khun fréť<br/>khun fréť</p> <p>John is as good as<br/>Fred. (as a student)</p>   | <p>khun cǒn rian kèn<br/>thâw ka khun fréť</p>  |
| <p>6. bâan sǒn lǎn nán<br/>jàj thâw kan</p> <p>Those two houses are<br/>equally big.</p>  | <p>bâan lǎnán<br/>bâan lǎnnoon</p>   | <p>bâan lǎnán jàj<br/>thâw ka bâan lǎnnoon</p> <p>That house is as big<br/>as the one over there.</p>     |
| <p>7. kháw dâj nèn<br/>dyan la 2,000 bàat<br/>phanrajaa kháw dâj<br/>nèn dyan la 2000 bàat</p> <p>He makes 2,000 Baht<br/>a month. His wife makes<br/>2,000 Baht a month.</p> | <p>phan ra jaa<br/>kháw kháw</p>   | <p>phan ra jaa kháw<br/>dâj nèn dyan<br/>thâw ka kháw</p> <p>His wife and he get<br/>the same salary.</p> |

### g) Sentence Construction and Response Drill

(Form a question with one set of cues and  
answer it according to the second set.)

<u>CUE</u>	<u>QUESTION</u>	<u>CUE</u>	<u>RESPONSE</u>
Example			
rian phaasǎa thaj sanúk rian phaasǎa juan	rian phaasǎa thaj sanúk thâw ka rian phaasǎa juan máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp No, it isn't.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Studying Thai is Fun. Studying Vietnamese	Is studying Thai as fun as study- ing Vietnamese?	Yes	sanúk thâwkan khráp Yes, it is.
1. khǒŋthîi wǒochintân phɛɛŋ khǒŋ thîi njujók	khǒŋ thîi wǒochintân phɛɛŋ thâw ka khǒŋ thîi njujók máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp No, they aren't.
Things in Washington Expensive Things in New York	Are things in Washington as expensive as in New York?		
2. roŋrian phaasǎa thîi montɛɛree jáj éf és aj	roŋrian phaasǎa thîi montɛɛree thâw ka éf és aj máj khráp	Yes	thâwkan khráp
The language school in Monterey. Big FSI	Is the language school in Monterey as big as FSI?		Yes, it is.
3. nákrían khonnán kèn nákrían khonnóon	nákrían khonnán kèn thâw ka nákrían khonnóon máj khráp	Yes	thâw kan khráp
That student good That student (there)	Is that student as good as that student over there?		Yes, he is.
4. jùu ameerikaa sabaaj jùu taanprathêet	jùu ameerikaa sabaaj thâw ka jùu taanprathêet máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp
Living in America Easy Living abroad	Is living in America as easy as living abroad?		No, it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. aakàat thîi wóochĩntân rón (aakàat) thîi krunthêep  The weather in Washington Hot. The weather in Bangkok	aakàat thîi wóochĩntân rón thâw kap thîi krunthêep májkráp  Is Washington as hot as Bangkok?	No          No, it isn't.
---	--	---

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thon máj jáp máj nǎa máj mýan máj tǎan kan máj hòt máj  2. sáknám dâj máj sákhêen dâj máj sák dâj máj rîit dâj máj	Is it durable? Does it wrinkle? Is it thick? Is it the same? Is it different? Does it shrink?  Is it washable (in water)? Is it dry cleanable? Is it washable? Can you iron it?
---	---

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u> (negative)	
1. thon máj Is it durable?	mâj thon lœej mâj thon mâj khôj thon { mâj (khôj) thon thâwràj { mâj (khôj) thon nák	Not at all. No. Not too durable. Not very durable.
2. nǎa máj Is it thick?	mâj nǎa lœej mâj nǎa mâj khôj nǎa { mâj (khôj) nǎa thâwràj { mâj nǎa nák	Not at all. No. Not too thick. Not very thick.
3. dii máj Is it good?	mâj dii lœej mâj dii mâj khôj dii	Not at all. No. Not too good.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |   |  |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. jáp máj<br>Does it wrinkle? | mâj jáp ləej<br>mâj jáp<br>mâj khôj jáp<br>mâj (khôj) jáp thâwràj<br>mâj jáp nák          | Not at all.<br>No.<br>Hardly at all.<br>Not very much.<br>Not so much. |
| 5. mŷan máj<br>Is it the same? | mâj mŷan ləej<br>mâj mŷan<br>mâj khôj mŷan<br>{ mâj (khôj) mŷan thâwràj<br>{ mâj mŷan nák | Not at all.<br>No.<br>Not really.<br>Not very much.                    |

### j) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>                             | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|--|---|
|  | <p><u>phâa jâan ní kajàanán tàan kan</u><br/> <u>janñaj khráp</u><br/>                     What's the difference between this<br/>                     fabric and that one?</p>   |
| 1. kham wâa 'sŷa' ka<br>kham wâa 'òok' | <p><u>kham wâa sŷa ka kham wâa òok</u><br/> <u>tàan kan janñaj khráp</u><br/>                     What's the difference between<br/>                     the word 'sŷa' and 'òok'?</p>                                    |
| 2. phaasăa isăan ka<br>phaasăa nŷa     | <p><u>phaasăa isăan ka phaasăa nŷa</u><br/> <u>tàan kan janñaj khráp</u><br/>                     What's the difference between<br/>                     Northeastern and Northern<br/>                     dialects?</p> |
| 3. khwaamhěn khǝŋkhăw<br>ka khǝŋ khun  | <p><u>khwaamhěn khǝŋkhăw ka khǝŋkhun</u><br/> <u>tàan kan janñaj khráp</u><br/>                     What's the difference between<br/>                     your opinion and his?</p>                                      |
| 4. nânsŷy<br>sǝŋlêm níi                | <p><u>nânsŷy sǝŋ lêm níi</u> tàan kan<br/> <u>janñaj khráp</u><br/>                     What's the difference between<br/>                     these two books?</p>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khǒŋ sǒŋ jàaŋníi

khǒŋ sǒŋ jàaŋ níi tàaŋ kan  
jaŋŋaj khráp  
What's the difference between  
these two things?

### k) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
|                              | <u>sák hēŋ</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to dry clean                                   |
| 1. sýy pháamǎj<br>jàaŋníi    | <u>sýy pháamǎj jàaŋníi</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to buy this kind<br>of silk.       |
| 2. duu nǎŋ ryâŋ nán          | <u>duu nǎŋ ryâŋnán</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to go to see that<br>movie.            |
| 3. pháŋk thīnân              | <u>pháŋk thīnân</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to stay there.                            |
| 4. tham râatchakaan dii kwàa | <u>tham râatchakaan</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to work for the<br>government.        |
| 5. jùu thěwníi               | <u>jùu thěwníi</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to live around<br>here.                    |
| 6. paj thaan aahǎan thaj     | <u>paj thaan aahǎan thaj</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to go and have a<br>Thai meal.   |
| 7. paj prajsaniklaaŋ         | <u>paj prajsaniklaaŋ</u> dii kwàa<br>It's better to go to the central<br>post office. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Expansion Drill

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | kwâaŋ<br>nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa níi nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa jàaŋ níi nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa mǎj jàaŋ níi nâa<br>kwâaŋ                                 | Wide<br>The fabric is wide.<br>The wide fabric.<br>This fabric is wide.<br>This kind of fabric is wide.<br>This kind of silk is wide.  |
| 2. | kwâaŋ<br>kwâaŋ thâwràj<br>nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj<br><br>phâa nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj<br>phâa jàaŋnán nâa kwâaŋ<br>thâw ràj<br>phaamǎj jàaŋnán nâa<br>kwâaŋ thâwràj | Wide<br>How wide?<br>How wide is the straight grain<br>(of fabric).<br>How wide is the fabric?<br><br>How wide is that kind of fabric?<br><br>How wide is that kind of silk? |
| 3. | kwâaŋ<br>kwâaŋ sìisìp níw<br>nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp níw<br><br>phâa nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp<br>phâa mǎj jàaŋnán nâa<br>kwâaŋ sìisìp níw                              | Wide<br>Forty inches wide<br>The straight grain of fabric is<br>40" wide.<br>Forty inches wide fabric(s)<br><br>That kind of silk is forty<br>inches wide.                   |
| 4. | mâj kwâaŋ<br>nâa mâj kwâaŋ<br><br>phâa nâa nâj kwâaŋ<br>phâamǎj jàaŋnán nâa<br>mâj kwâaŋ  | Not wide<br>The straight grain of fabric is<br>not wide.<br>The not very wide fabric(s)<br>That kind of silk is<br>not wide.   |

### 36.4 EXERCISES

#### a) Find out from the tutor

1. what kinds of cloth you can buy in Thailand,

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. where you can buy them (names of shops and locations),
  3. where and how silk is 'grown' in Thailand<sup>1</sup>,
  4. where and how it is woven and what kind of dye is used, and
  5. what the difference is between various kinds of fabrics sold in Thailand (in terms of whether they shrink, are washable, durable, etc.)
- b) Discuss the difference in quality and price between different objects.
- c) Discuss differences in climate in different countries.
- d) Find out from the tutor or another student what some of the "'superlatives'" in the world are; for example,
1. the most beautiful city,
  2. the hottest climate,
  3. the oldest city, etc.
- e) One student suggests various 'action options'. Other students disagree with his suggestions and suggest others that they consider better. Finally one student comes up with what he considers to be the best suggestion of all. Other students disagree or agree with the suggestion.

---

<sup>1</sup> nǎon 'worm'; thoo (phâa) 'weave cloth'; jóom (phâa) 'to dye cloth'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 36.5 VOCABULARY

baaŋ	thin
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
frét	Fred (name)
hòt	to shrink
jàaŋ	kind, type (with emphasis on quality)
jàaŋdii	good quality
jáp	to wrinkle
jóom (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
khêep	narrow
khwaamhěn	opinion
kwâaŋ	wide, to be broad
lăa	yard (36'')
mâjkhôoj	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mét	seed, grain, pill
mítrophâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
nâa khêep	narrow
năa	heavy (of material), heavy texture
nôon (tua)	worm
nyáphâa	texture of cloth
phâa fâaj	cotton
phâa mǎj	silk
phâa najlôn	nylon
phátlom (khrýaŋ)	electric fan
rít	to iron (cloth)
sák hêeŋ	to dry clean

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sák nám	washable
tàaŋ kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
thâw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thîisut	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thoo (phâa)	to weave cloth
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

#### 37.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing and Jewelry

- khonsýy: phâa jàanńi tət sýanôok  
ka kaankeen phûuchaaaj  
cháj phâa kii lăa For this kind of  
material how many  
yards does it take  
for a jacket and  
pair of pants?
- khonkhăaj: raaw pèet lăa About 8 yards.
- khonsýy: khun mii sǐi araj  
bâan khráp What colors do  
you have?
- khonkhăaj: mii sǐi thaw, dam,  
kromathâa léswkô  
sǐi námtaan I have grey, black,  
blue, and brown.
- khonsýy: sǐi tòk bâan máj Does the color  
fade any?
- khon khăaj: mâj tòk læej Not at all.  
ráprœœj dâj I can guarantee it.
- khonsýy: nán, phom aw sǐi  
pèet lăa Then I'll take 8  
yards of grey.  
(khonkhăaj tət phâa,  
aw phâa sàj thŭn, lé  
sœœj hâj khonsýy.) (The saleslady cuts  
the material, puts  
it in a bag, and  
hands it to the  
buyer.)
- khonsýy: thánmòt thâwràj khráp How much is it  
altogether?
- khonkhăaj: kâaw róœœj hòksíp bàat  
thûan khá 960 baht exactly.  
khun mâj chom sǐnkháa  
jàan yŭn bâan rěkhá Wouldn't you like  
to look at some-  
thing else?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khonsýy:	khun mii araj bâaŋ khráp	What do you have?
khonkhăaj:	thaanóon mii khrýaŋŋən, khrýaŋthóm, khrýaŋthooŋ lēsŋ kô phétphlooŋ  thaanxhwăa mii khrýaŋ khŋən, khrýaŋ thooŋ sămrít ka máajkēsálàk	Over there's silver- ware, niello ware, gold, and jewelry.  On the right there is lacquerware, bronzeware, and wood carvings.
khonkhăaj:	ráan (khŋooŋ) raw mii khŋooŋ háj lýak mâak kwăa thîiýyn	Our shop has a better selection than other places.

### 37.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) Measurement. In Thailand the metric system, the 'English' system, and the (old) Thai system are used in measurement. Some things are measured in one system and some in another, and some things can be measured in more than one system:

<u>System used</u>	<u>Things being measured</u>
Either metric or 'English'	length, width, height of small objects (tables, etc.)
Metric	distance, weight, content
Metric	length of fabrics, except silk in Bangkok
(Old) Thai	land area

#### Measuring units

<u>Metric system</u>		<u>'English' system</u>	
méet	'meter'	níw	'inch'
sen(timéet)	'centimeter'	fút	'foot'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kiloo(méet)	'kilometer'	lăa	'yard'
kram	'gram'	lăa khrÿn	'one and one half yards'
sen(tikram)	'centigram'	khrÿn lăa	'half yard'
kiloo(kram)	'kilogram'	sakruu	'one fourth yard'
lít	'liter'	mai	'mile'

The Thai system will be taken up later.

b) ráp rōon means 'to guarantee, certify, or vouch for something'.

ráp rōon dâj could be translated 'You can take my word for it'.

c) cháj means 'to use up, require, take' (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)

1. of time: naanníi tōn cháj weelaa sōon pii

This work takes 2 years.

2. of people: naanníi tōn cháj cawnâathîi lăaj khon

This work requires a lot of personnel.

d) lÿak means 'to choose or select'.

khōon hâj lÿak 'selections' (of merchandise, things, etc.)

thaan lÿak 'choice' (as a means)

kaan lÿak 'Choice, selection' (as an action)

lÿak + PERSON + pen + POSITION, TITLE 'to choose someone to be in a certain position'

kháw lÿak kháw pen prathaan khōon samoosōon

'They chose him as President of the club.'

lÿaktân 'to elect' (as in a political election)

kháw dâj ráp lÿaktân pen prathanaathípōdii khōon saharát

'He was elected President of the United States.'



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

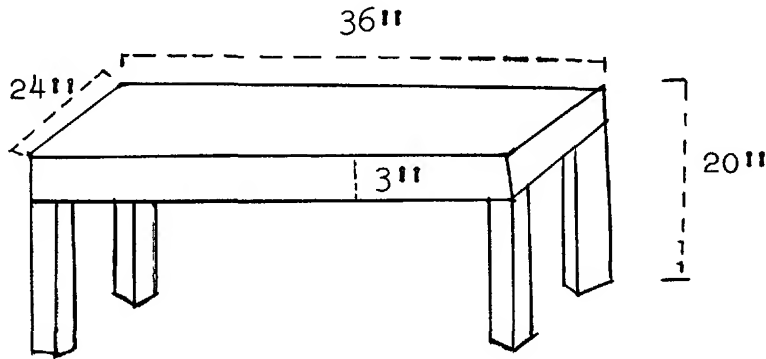
'The rent for this house is  
not high.'

'This house doesn't rent  
for a high price.'

Although both members of the pairs of sentences above  
are correct, the second type is normally used.

Chart 1:

### DIMENSIONS



tó tuaní	kwâaŋ	24 níw
	jaaw	36 níw
	nǎa	3 níw
	sǔuŋ	20 níw

This table is 24" wide.

36" long.

3" thick.

20" high.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 37.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phâajàanníi tàt sýakaankeeng phûuchaaaj cháj phâa kìi lǎa  
For this kind of material, how many yards does it take to make a jacket and a pair of trousers?
2. ñaanníi, tōng cháj khontham kìi khon.  
How many people does this work require?
3. ñaanníi, tōng cháj weelaa kìi pii.  
How many years does this work take?
4. ñaan phátthanaa thīnīi tōng cháj cāwnāathīi lǎaj khon.  
How many personnel are needed for this community development?
5. khroonkaanníi tōng cháj ñen māak.  
This project costs a lot of money.

#### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phāanīi sīi māj tòk læej. ráprōng dāj.  
This fabric is colorfast. (I) can guarantee (it).
2. phûuchaaaj khonnīi pen khondii. ráprōng dāj.  
This man is a good person. (I) can attest to (it).
3. khōng thīi ráannīi pen khōng dii thīsut. ráprōng dāj.  
The merchandise here is the best. (I) can vouch for (it).
4. aahāan thīnīi arōj thīsut. ráprōng dāj.  
The food here is the best. (I) can guarantee (it).
5. rōt khannīi khryān dii māak. ráprōng dāj.  
This car has very good engine. (I) can vouch for that.
6. bāan lǎng níi khāachāw māj phseṅ kēnpaj. ráprōng dāj.  
The rent of this house is not too high. (I) can guarantee it. (You can take my word for it).

7. ráanníi mii khǒŋ hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn. ráprɔŋ dâj.  
This store has better selections than others. (I) can guarantee it.
8. khrȳan̄thǒm ráanníi dii kwàa thîiỳyn. ráprɔŋ dâj.  
The nielloware in this shop is better than other places. (I) can guarantee it.

c) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləej ráprɔŋ dâj.<br/>The color of this fabric doesn't fade. (I) can guarantee.</p>                    | <p>phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləej.<br/>I can guarantee that this fabric is colorfast.</p>                                  |
| <p>2. khon khonníi pen khondii ráprɔŋ dâj<br/>This man is a good person. (I) can guarantee.</p>                                 | <p>phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa khon khonníi pen khondii.<br/>I can guarantee that this person is a good man.</p>                                 |
| <p>3. khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒŋ dii thîisùt ráprɔŋ dâj<br/>Things in this shop are of the best quality. (I) can guarantee.</p> | <p>phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒŋ dii thîisùt.<br/>I can guarantee that things in this shop are of the best quality.</p> |
| <p>4. aahǎan thîi nîi arəj thîisùt. ráprɔŋ dâj.<br/>The food here is the best (I) can guarantee.</p>                            | <p>phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa aahǎan thîinîi arəj thîisùt.<br/>I can guarantee that the food here is the best.</p>                              |
| <p>5. rót khanníi khrȳan̄ dii mâak. ráprɔŋ dâj.<br/>This car has a very good engine. (I) can guarantee.</p>                    | <p>phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa rót khanníi khrȳan̄ dii mâak<br/>I can guarantee that this car has a very good engine.</p>                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>6.   bâan lǎn níi khâachâw mâj<br/>              phɛɛŋ kɛɛnpaj<br/>              ráprɔɔŋ dâj<br/>              The rent for this house<br/>              is not too expensive.<br/>              (I) can guarantee.</p>    | <p>phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa bâan lǎn níi<br/>          khâachâw mâj phɛɛŋ kɛɛnpaj.<br/>          I can guarantee that the rent<br/>          for this house is not too<br/>          high.</p>                   |
| <p>7.   khrýaŋ thɔɔŋ thîi níi<br/>              dii kwâa thîi yyn<br/>              ráprɔɔŋ dâj<br/>              The jewelry here is<br/>              better than at other<br/>              places. (I) can guarantee.</p> | <p>phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa<br/>          khrýaŋ thɔɔŋ thîi níi dii<br/>          kwâa thîi yyn<br/>          I can guarantee that the<br/>          jewelry here is better than<br/>          other places.</p> |

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.   nánsǎy books	khun ca aw araj What do you want?	aw nánsǎy Books.
2.   thaw grey	khun ca aw sǎi araj. What color would you like?	aw sǎi thaw I want grey.
3.   sǎam lǎa three yards	khun ca aw thâwraj How much do you want?	aw sǎam lǎa I want three yards.
4.   an jàj The big one.	khun ca aw an nǎj Which one do you want?	aw an jàj I want the big one.
5.   lǎŋ sǎi phan bàat The 4,000 Baht one	khun ca aw bâan lǎŋ nǎj Which house do you want?	aw lǎŋ sǎi phan bàat. I want the 4,000 Baht one.
6.   jàaŋ dii thîisùt The best kind	khun ca aw phâa jàaŋ nǎj Which kind of fabric would you like?	aw jàaŋ dii thîisùt The best kind.



e) Sentence Construction Drill

The instructor will ask questions so as to elicit the answers given in the cues, as in the following example:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| T: aw araj khráp   | What do you want (to get)?                               |
| S: phâa mǎjthaj khráp  | Thai silk.   |
| T: phâa jàan nǎj   | What quality of cloth?                                   |
| S: jàan dii thĭisùt  | The best quality.  |
| T: aw kĭi lǎa khráp  | How many yards?  |
| S: sǎam lǎa khráp  | 3 yards.   |
| T: aw phâa mǎjthaj jàan<br>dii 4 lǎa, chĭj máj<br>khráp      | You want 4 yards of good<br>quality Thai silk, right?    |
| S: mâj chĭj, aw phâa<br>mǎjthaj jàan dii<br>thĭisùt sǎam lǎa | No, I want three yards of the<br>best quality Thai silk. |

Use the following sets of cue words in the same manner as above:

1. sĭa, dii, sǒon tua, sĭi khǎaw
2. sĭyanôok ka kaankeen, dii thĭisùt, nĭn chùt, sĭi námtaan
3. nánjsŷy phaasǎa thaj, sǒon lĕm, diidii
4. phátlom, jàandii, jĭipùn, nĭn an

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Question and Construction Drill

Pretend you don't know what the other person said, and ask a question so as to get a repetition of the original statement.

<u>First Answer</u>	<u>Second Question</u>
1. sǒŋ lǎa two yards	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi lǎa</u> } How many yards did you say you want?
2. sǐi thaw	aw <u>sǐi araj</u> nakhráp What color?
3. phâamǎj silk	aw { araj            } nakhráp { <u>phâa araj</u> } What did you say you want?
4. jàaŋnóon That kind	aw <u>jàaŋ nǎj</u> nakhráp What kind did you say you want?
5. nỳn chùt one set	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi chùt</u> } How much did you say you want?
6. khrỳaŋ thǒm Nielloware	aw <u>araj</u> nakhráp What did you say you want?
7. jàaŋ raakhaa pèet síp bàat The 80 Baht one.	aw <u>jàaŋnǎj</u> nakhráp? What kind did you say you want?
8. sǎam lêm Three	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi lêm</u> } How many did you say you want?
9. tua sǐikhǎaw The white one	aw <u>tuanǎj</u> nakhráp Which one did you say you want?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. an thîi jùu thaan                      aw an nǎj nakhráp  
    kwǎa  
    The one on the right                      Which one did you say you want?

### g) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- ráanníi mii khǒon hâj lýak mâak kwàa  
thîiyyn  
This store has a better selection of  
merchandise than other places.
1. phâamǎj                      ráan níi mii phâamǎj hâj lýak mâak  
    silk                      kwàa thîiyyn  
    This store has a better selection of  
    silk than other places.
2. nǎnsǎy                      ráanníi mii nǎnsǎy hâj lýak mâak kwàa  
    books                      thîiyyn  
    This store has a better selection of  
    books than other places.
3. kháw                      kháw mii nǎnsǎy hâj lýak mâak kwàa  
    They                      thîiyyn  
    They have a better selection of  
    books than other places.
4. bâanchâw                      kháw mii bâanchâw hâj lýak mâak kwàa  
    houses for rent                      thîiyyn  
    They have a better selection of houses  
    for rent than other places.
5. khǒon                      kháw mii khǒon hâj lýak mâak kwàa  
    things                      thîiyyn  
    They have a better selection of  
    merchandise than other places.
6. araj                      kháw mii araj hâj lýak mâak kwàa  
    things                      thîiyyn  
    They have a better selection of things  
    than other places.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. nánsŷy sŏŋ lêm níi, khun ca lŷak lêm năj Of these two books which one would you choose?	phŏm aw lêm nŏon I'd take that one.
2. chianmăj ka krunthêep. khun ca lŷak jùu canwăt năj. Between Chiangmai and Bangkok which province would you choose to live in?	phŏm(ca) lŷak jùu krunthêep I'd choose to live in Bangkok.
3. thâa khun lŷak dâj, khun ca lŷak pen mŏo rŷ khruu If you can have a choice, would you rather be a doctor, or a teacher?	phŏm lŷak pen mŏo I'd rather be a doctor.
4. khun ca lŷak jùu thŷinăj Where will you (choose to) live?	phŏm măt mii thaŋ lŷak I have no choice.
5. khon sŏŋ khonnŷi khun ca lŷak khraj pen prathaanaa thŷipbŏodii Of these two persons, which one would you choose for President?	phŏm khŷt wâa phŏm ca lŷak khon rĕek pen prathaanaa thŷipbŏodii I think I'd choose the first one for President.
6. thâa khun lŷak dâj, khun ca lŷak pen phŷujŷŷ rŷ phŷuchaaj If you had a choice, would you rather be a woman or a man?	pen phŷuchaaj dii kwâa khŷap It's better to be a man.
7. thammaj khăw tŏŋ chăj weelaa hăa roonrian hăt lŷuk jùu lăaj dyan Why did it take him many months to find a school for his children?	phŷŏ khăw jăak ca lŷak roonrian diidii hăt lŷuk khăw rian Because he wanted to choose good schools for them.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>8. thammaj kháw ca tòn<br/>paj wíatnaam<br/>Why does he have to go<br/>to Vietnam?</p>   | <p>phró thaan rãatchakaan lýak<br/>kháw paj<br/>Because the government has<br/>chosen him to go.</p>                                       |
| <p>9. khun ca lýak khãarãatchakaan<br/>paj duu ñaan thîi tàan<br/>prathêet kîi khon<br/>How many government offi-<br/>cials are going to go go<br/>abroad on an observation<br/>tour?</p> | <p>raw ca lýak (khãarãatchakaan)<br/>paj (duu ñaan thîi tàan prathêet)<br/>3 khon<br/>We'll choose three government<br/>officials.</p>     |
| <p>10. khun ca lýak khãarãatchakaan<br/>paj duu ñaan tàan prathêet<br/>càak thîinǎj bãan<br/>Where are you going to choose<br/>the government officials to<br/>go abroad from?</p>        | <p>raw ca lýak càak mahǎawítthajaalaj<br/>lé krasuan tàan tàan<br/>We'll choose them from univer-<br/>sities and different ministries.</p> |

### 1) Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. níw<br/>kîi níw<br/>kwâan kîi níw<br/>nâa kwâan kîi níw<br/>phâa níi nâa kwâan kîi níw</p> | <p>Inch(es)<br/>How many inches?<br/>How many inches wide?<br/>How many inches wide (for fabric)?<br/>How wide is this fabric?</p> |
| <p>2. lǎa<br/>kîi lǎa<br/>jaaw kîi lǎa<br/>chýak sênníi jaaw kîi lǎa</p>                         | <p>Yard(s)<br/>How many yards?<br/>How many yards long?<br/>How many yards long is this<br/>rope?</p>                              |
| <p>3. kiloo (méet)<br/>kîi kiloo<br/>jaaw kîi kiloo<br/>thanǎn sǎajníi jaaw kîi kiloo</p>        | <p>kilo(s)<br/>How many kilos?<br/>How many kilos long?<br/>How many kilos is this road?<br/>How long is this road?</p>            |
| <p>4. méet<br/>kwâan kîi méet<br/>thanǎn sǎajníi kwâan kîi<br/>méet</p>                          | <p>Meter(s)<br/>How many meter(s) wide?<br/>How wide is this road?</p>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. kiloo (kram)<br>kìi kiloo<br>nàk kìi kiloo<br>khǒŋ chín nǐi nàk kìi<br>kilo or kilos | kilo(s)<br>How many kilos?<br>How many kilos by weight?<br>How many kilos does this thing weigh? |
| 6. thâwràj<br>nǎa thâwràj<br>nǎnsǎy lêm nǐi nǎa thâwràj                                 | How much?<br>How thick?<br>How thick is this book?   |
| 7. thâwràj<br>sǔuŋ thâwràj<br>khun sǔuŋ thâwràj   | How much?<br>How tall?<br>How tall are you?  |

### j) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. phāanǐi kwāaŋ thâwràj this fabric wide how much	phāanǐi nǎa kwāaŋ thâwràj How wide is this fabric?
2. thanǒn míttraphâap jaaw kiloo Friendship Highway long kilo	thanǒn míttraphâap jaaw kìi kiloo.  How many kilometers long is the Friendship Highway?
3. tỳk lǎnnán sǔuŋ thâwràj this building tall how much	tỳk lǎnnán sǔuŋ thâwràj  How tall is this building?
4. nǎnsǎy lêm nán nǎa nǎa that book thick, pages	nǎnsǎy lêm nán nǎa kìi nǎa How {many pages} is {thick}            } this book?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khǒŋ chínní  
nàk  
kíloo  
this thing  
heavy  
kilo
- khǒŋ chínní nàk kí kiloo  
How many kilos does this thing weigh?
6. kradaan phènní  
nǎa  
níw  
this board  
thick  
inches
- kradaan phènní nǎa kí níw  
How {many inches} is  
{thick} }  
this board?
7. khun  
nàk  
thâwràj  
you  
heavy, how much
- khun nàk thâwràj  
How much do you weigh?

### 37.4 EXERCISES

- a) Pretend you are buying material for making some article of clothing. You take the part of the buyer; another student, the seller.
- b) Discuss the dimensions of various objects in the room.
- c) One student describes a certain object by giving its dimensions and other characteristics (such as color, price, use, etc.) of it. Another student tries to guess what is being described.
- d) Find out the weight and height of everyone in the room, then make comparison such as 'John is 10 pounds heavier than Mary', etc. (poon 'pound' may be used.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 37.5 VOCABULARY

an	classifier for inanimate objects, careless speakers often use <u>an</u> as a substitute for other classifiers
aw	to want (to have) cf. <u>tônkaan</u>
cháj	to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread, meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glassware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chÿak	rope, cord, classifier for elephants
duu naan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (something) in operation
fút	foot, English system
kaan lýak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaankeen	trousers, pants
kèsalàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
khǎen	to lacquer
khǒn hâj lýak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khǒn kèsalàk	carvings



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khroonkaan	project
khryâṅ	engine; -ware (see below)
khryâṅkhǎen	lacquerware
khryâṅṅen	silverware
khryâṅphét khryâṅthooṅ	'jewelry'
khryâṅthǎm	nielloware
khryâṅthooṅ	things of gold
khryâṅthooṅsǎmrít	bronzeware
khryṅ lǎa	half yard
kiloo(kram)	kilogram metric system
kiloo(méet)	kilometer metric system
kradaan	board
kram	gram metric system
lǎakhrṅ	one and one half yards
lít	liter metric system
lyak	to choose or select
lyaktân	to elect (as in a political election)
máaj kèsalak	woodcarvings
mai	mile
méet	meter metric system
nâa	width (for fabric)
nàk	to be heavy (in weight), to be hard (as of work)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

níw	inch (English system)
nôok	external
naan pháththanaa	community development
nen	silver
phét	diamond
phétphlōoj	jewelry
phlōoj	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
poon	pound (weight)
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
prathaan	president, chairman
ráprouj dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
săaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line - like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sakruu	one fourth yard
samoosōon	club, association
sen (tikram)	centigram metric system
sen (timéet)	centimeter metric system
sâa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses; woman's dress
sâa kaankeen	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

s̄yānōk	jacket
tət	to cut, sever
thaaŋ l̄yāk	choice (as a means)
thōm	niello process
thooŋl̄yāŋ	the market term for bronze
thooŋsāmrit	bronze
thūŋ	a bag
thaw	grey
thūan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
tōk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto) to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

#### 38.0 BASIC DIALOG: Shopping for Toilet Articles

khonkhǎaj:	sýy araj khráp	What do you want to buy?
khonsýy:	prɛɲsɿifan miɿ máj	Do you have tooth-brushes?
khonkhǎaj:	miɿ khráp	We do.
khonsýy:	khǒɔ duu nòj, dâj máj	May I see them?
khonkhǎaj:	níi khráp	Here they are.
	jàaɲní an la 8 bàat,	This kind is 8 baht each.
	jàaɲnán 12 bàat	That kind, 12.
khonsýy:	thíi thùuk kwàa níi miɿ máj	You have anything cheaper?
khonkhǎaj:	mâj miɿ khráp	No.
khonsýy:	ɲán, aw jáaɲ pɛɛt bàat nýɲ an	In that case I'll take the 8 baht one.
khonkhǎaj:	ráp araj ìik máj khráp	Want anything else?
khonsýy:	aw sabùu láks kônnyɲ	I'd like a bar of Lux soap.
khonkhǎaj:	nôok rý naj khráp	Imported or domestic.
khonsýy:	aw sabùu nôok, léɛwkô jaasɿifan lòɔt lék lòɔt nýɲ, burlí klètthɔɔɲ nýɲ sɔɔɲ ka májkhít nýɲ klàk	Imported, and one small tube of tooth-paste, a package of 'Gold Flake' cigarettes, and a small box of matches.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khonkhǎaj:	jaasǎifan jǎihǎo araj khráp	What brand of tooth paste?
khonsýy:	araj kǎ dǎj	Any kind (brand).
khonkhǎaj:	nǎi khráp, thánmòt 27 bàat 50 satǎan	Here you are. That'll be ฿.27.50.
	(khonsýy sòn hǎj khonkhǎaj sǎamsíp bàat)	The customer gives the salesman 30 baht.
khonkhǎaj:	nǎi khráp, nenthǎon, sǎon bàat háasíp satǎan. khǎopkhun máak nakhráp, wanlǎj cheen maa ùtnǎn lǎk nakhráp	Here is your change, 2.50 baht. Thank you very much. Please come and patronize me again next time.

### 38.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

#### a) Noun Compounds

preesǎifan 'toothbrush': preesǎ 'brush' + sǎi 'polish'  
+ fan 'tooth'

jaasǎifan 'toothpaste': jaa 'medicine, chemical compound'  
+ sǎi + fan

sabùuhǎom 'toilet soap': sabùu 'soap' + hǎom 'smell sweet'

sabùusákphâa 'laundry soap, detergent': sabùu + sák 'wash'  
+ phâa 'clothing'

mǎjkhǎit(faj) 'matches': mǎj 'wood' + khǎit 'strike,  
scratch' + faj 'fire'

#### b) jǎihǎo means 'brand' or 'trade name'.

Observe the use in the following sentences:

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
(1) rót jîihôo araj What make of car is it?	fòot a Ford.
(2) sabùu jîihôo araj What brand of soap is it?	láks Lux.
(3) wíthajú jîihôo araj What brand of radio is it?	aa sii ee R.C.A.

- c) If araj 'what kind' is used after the noun in a question, several answers are possible, as is shown in the examples below:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
(1) rót araj	rót fòot                      Ford
	rót ameerikan              An American car
	rót sapòot                    A sport car
(2) sabùu araj	sabùu hǒom                    toilet soap
	sabùu láks                      Lux soap

- d) Brand names are sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising, as in the following examples:

(1) sabùu traá <u>nók kĕsw</u>	Parrot brand soap
(2) kratìknám traá <u>nókjuun</u>	Peacock brand thermos
(3) phâa traá <u>lûukthóo</u>	Peach brand cloth
(4) phènsĭaŋ traá <u>kratàaj</u>	Rabbit brand records

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

e) In the case of some very well-known products the trade name may be the main identifying feature of the name:

(1) jaa traa sŷa Tiger (brand) balm

(2) jaa hŷom traa máa Horse brand nice-smelling inhalants

f) nŷok and naj.

(khŷon) nŷok is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand.

(khŷon) naj is used to refer to products made in Thailand.

Observe the following examples:

(1) sabuu nŷok 'Imported soap'

sabuu naj 'local soap'

sabuu thaj 'Thai soap'

(2) nákrian nŷok 'Thais who were educated abroad'

nákrian naj 'Thais educated in Thailand'

But notice the difference in usage in the following examples:

khonnŷok 'outsider' or 'layman'

khonnaj 'insider'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 38.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### a) Noun Classifiers<sup>1</sup>

In 4.1 you were given a list of classifiers and a general description of classifiers. In succeeding lessons you have been introduced to more of them. You are now aware that in many types of Noun Phrases the classifier must occur with the noun; therefore, it is imperative that you know which classifier is associated with which noun.

In general it is probably just as simple to learn the classifier of a noun at the same time that you learn the noun (just as you might learn the gender class of a noun in German or French) without reference to the meaning of the noun. However, since there are some cases in which the classifier of a noun is predictable from the meaning of the noun, a more nearly complete list of classifiers is given below. This may help you remember the ones you have already had better, since it's easier to see the 'logic' of the system if you already know the nouns and their classifiers, and it should help you guess which classifier to use with nouns you will learn.

<u>Classifier</u>	<u>Reference</u>
(1) khon	Ordinary people, names of professions, members of the family
<u>khruu 2 khon</u> <u>lûuk 3 khon</u>	'two teachers' 'three children'
(2) oŋ	Buddha images
(3) tua	Non-human things with human parts (legs, arms, etc.)
<u>măa 2 tua</u> <u>kaankeen 1 tua</u>	'two dogs' 'a pair of pants'
An exception is <u>burîi nỳn tua</u>	'a cigarette'

---

<sup>1</sup>The information given here is taken from Noss, 106. Examples have been added to make the points clearer.





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(11) hòo refers to packages or things wrapped in paper.

burlì nỳn hòo 'a carton of cigarettes'

(12) klòn refers to a small carton or plastic box.

sabùu nỳn klòn 'a box of soap'

(13) an is a very common classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers. The examples given in the drills are the nouns that are usually used with an.

(14) With many noun compounds the classifier and its noun referent are identical. Some examples are:

tûujen nỳn tûu<sup>1</sup> one refrigerator

chútrápkhèek nỳn chú  
furniture

tawkées nỳn taw one gas stove

rûupmyanṭhaj nỳn rûup<sup>1</sup> one picture of Thailand

khryânsákphâa nỳn khryân one washing machine

bajmáaj nỳn baj one leaf

tian nỳn tian one bed

### b) Nominalizations

thîi 'that which, the one(s) which, such ones as, etc.' serves as a nominalizer (i.e. an agent for creating nouns) of Verb Phrases (and Sentences) as in the following example:

---

<sup>1</sup>baj may also be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

NOMINAL		
Nominalizer	Verb Phrase	Determiner
thîi	thùuk kwàa	nîi
(that which)	(is cheaper)	(this)
'that which is cheaper'		

### 38.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Classifiers)

- |    |      |  |  |
|----|------|--|--|
| 1. | an   | prənsǎifan nỳn an<br>thîi pəetkrapǎn nỳn an<br>thîi tii khàj 1 an<br>tawrít 1 an<br>phátlom 1 an | One toothbrush<br>one can opener<br>One (egg) beater<br>one iron<br>one electric fan |
| 2. | dâam | pàakaa 1 dâam  | one pen  |
| 3. | thên | dinsǎo 1 thên  | one pencil   |
| 4. | lòot | jaasǎifan 1 lòot   | one tube of tooth-paste  |
| 5. | sɔɔn | buríi 1 sɔɔn<br><br>sɔɔncòtmǎaj 1 sɔɔn   | one package of cigarettes<br><br>one envelope  |
| 6. | hòo  | buríi 1 hòo<br><br>májkhít 1 hòo   | One carton of cigarettes<br><br>one big package of matches                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

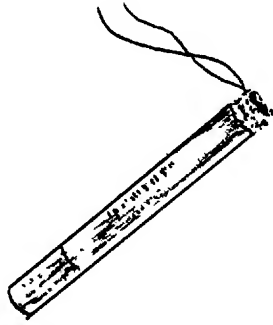
7. phèn	kradaat 1 phèn	one piece of paper
	rûup 1 phèn	one (copy of a) photo
	kradaan 1 phèn	one piece of board
	phěenthîi 1 phèn	one copy of a map
8. kôn	sabûu 1 kôn	one bar of soap
	námtaan 1 kôn	one lump/cube of sugar
	námkhěeη 1 kôn	a piece of ice, an ice cube
9. chabàp	náηsýyphim 1 chabàp	one newspaper
	còtmǎaj 1 chabàp	one letter
10. lêm	náηsýy 1 lêm	one book
	samùt 1 lêm	one textbook
11. baj	krapǎw 1 baj	one pocketbook, handbag, briefcase, suitcase
	(thonabàt) baj la rój	one 100 baht bank-note
	rûup 1 baj	One (example of a) picture
	tûu 1 baj	one cabinet (as a container)
12. tua	tó 1 tua	one table/desk
	tó rîitphâa 1 tua	one ironing board
	kâwîi nỳη tua	one chair
	sýa 1 tua	one blouse
	kaaηkeen 1 tua	one pair of pants
	kaprooη 1 tua	one (woman's) skirt

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

13. khr̂ŷaŋ	wítthajú 1 khr̂ŷaŋ	one radio
	thiíwii thoorathát } 1 khr̂ŷaŋ	one TV set
	khr̂ŷaŋsákphâa 1 khr̂ŷaŋ	one washing machine
	khr̂ŷaŋpèet krapǎoŋ 1 khr̂ŷaŋ	one electric can opener
	khr̂ŷaŋ pràpaakàat 1 khr̂ŷaŋ	one air conditioner
14. chúť	khr̂ŷaŋkhrua 1 chúť	one set of kitchen equipment
	ŝŷaphâa 1 chúť	one suit of clothes
	chúťrápkhèek 1 chúť	one set of living- room furniture

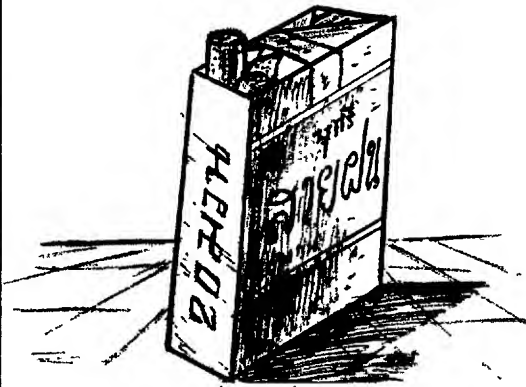
THAI BASIC COURSE



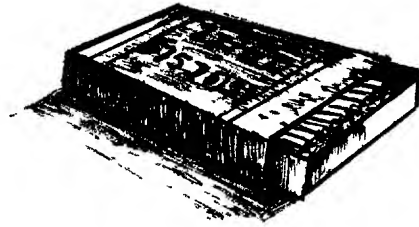
burii mỳn } tua  
                  } muan



májkhít (faj) nỳn kâan



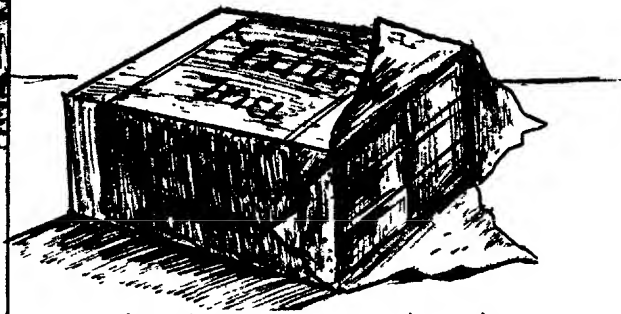
burii nỳn sỏon



májkhít (faj) nỳn klàk



burii nỳn hòo



májkhít (faj) nỳn hòo

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. præŋsɿifan nỳŋ Toothbrush	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) præŋsɿifan nỳŋ an (I want) one tooth- brush.
2. jaasɿifan sǎŋ Toothpaste	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) jaasɿifan sǎŋ lòot (I want) two tubes of toothpaste.
3. burìi sǎŋ Cigarettes	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(sỳy) burìi sǎŋ sǎŋ (I want) two pack- ages of cigarettes.
4. sabùu hǎŋ sǎam Toilet soap	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(sỳy) sabùu hǎŋ sǎam kǎŋ (I want) three bars of toilet soap.
5. májkhìit nỳŋ Matches	ráp araj khráp What do you want?	(sỳy) májkhìit nỳŋ klàk (I want) one box of matches.
6. sabùu láks jàaŋnǎk sǎŋ Imported Lux toilet soap Two	aw araj khráp What do you want?	aw sabùu láks jàaŋnǎk sǎŋ kǎŋ  I want two bars of imported Lux toilet soap.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>7. prəɛŋsɯ́ifan<br/>khanàat lék<br/>nỳn</p> <p>Small toothbrush<br/>One</p>                           | <p>aw araj khráp</p> <p>What would you<br/>like?</p>  | <p>sýy prəɛŋsɯ́ifan<br/>khanàat lék nỳn an</p> <p>One small toothbrush.</p>                               |
| <p>8. jaasɯ́ifan<br/>lòot lék jàaŋŋòok,<br/>nỳn</p> <p>Imported tooth-<br/>paste, small tube<br/>One</p> | <p>ráp araj khráp</p> <p>What would you<br/>like?</p> | <p>aw jaasɯ́ifan<br/>jàaŋŋòok<br/>lòotlék<br/>nỳn lòot</p> <p>One small tube<br/>imported toothpaste.</p> |

### c) Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. <u>sabùu</u> nỳn kōon</p> <p><u>sabùu hǒom</u> nỳn kōon</p> <p><u>sabùu (hǒom) láks</u> nỳn kōon</p> <p><u>sabùu (hǒom) láks jàaŋŋòok</u><br/>nỳn kōon</p>                                     | <p>One bar of soap.</p> <p>One bar of toilet soap.</p> <p>One bar of Lux toilet soap.</p> <p>One bar of imported Lux<br/>toilet soap.</p> |
| <p>2. <u>pàakkaa</u> nỳn dâam</p> <p><u>pàakkaa páakkêe</u> nỳn dâam</p> <p><u>pàakkaa páakkêe jàaŋŋii</u><br/>nỳn dâam.</p> <p><u>pàakkaa páakkêe jàaŋŋii,</u><br/><u>khanàat lék</u> nỳn dâam.</p> | <p>One pen</p> <p>One Parker pen</p> <p>One good Parker pen</p> <p>One good Parker pen, small<br/>size.</p>                               |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. <u>jaasĭifan</u> nỳn lòt  | One toothpaste  |
| <u>jaasĭifan ajpaanaa</u> nỳn lòt  | One Ipana toothpaste                                    |
| <u>jaasĭifan ajpaanaa jàaṅṅòk</u><br>nỳn lòt   | One imported Ipana toothpaste                           |
| <u>jaasĭifan ajpaanaa</u><br><u>jàaṅṅòk,</u> } khaṅṅaṅ<br>} lòt<br><u>jàj</u> nỳn lòt          | One imported Ipana toothpaste,<br>big size/large tube   |
| 4. <u>prēsĭifan</u> nỳn an   | One toothbrush  |
| <u>prēsĭifan dòktêe wés</u> nỳn an   | One Dr. West toothbrush                                 |
| <u>prēsĭifan dòktêe wés jàaṅ</u><br><u>ṅṅ</u> nỳn an   | One soft Dr. West toothbrush                            |
| 5. <u>burĭi</u> nỳn sṅṅ  | One package of cigarettes                               |
| <u>burĭi thaj</u> nỳn sṅṅ  | One package of Thai cigarettes                          |
| <u>burĭi thaj jàaṅṅii</u> nỳn sṅṅ  | One package of good Thai<br>cigarettes                  |
| <u>burĭi thaj jàaṅṅii jĭihṅṅ</u><br><u>araĭkṅṅṅ</u> nỳn sṅṅ                                    | One package of Thai cigarettes<br>of any brand          |
| 6. <u>rót</u> nỳn khan   | One car   |
| <u>rót ameerikan</u> nỳn khan  | One American car  |
| <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u> nỳn<br>khan  | One beautiful American car                              |
| <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u><br><u>jàaṅṅii</u> nỳn khan                                       | One good, beautiful American<br>car                     |
| <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u><br><u>jàaṅṅii khaṅṅatjǎj</u> nỳn khan                            | One big good and beautiful<br>American car              |
| <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u><br><u>jàaṅṅii khaṅṅatjǎj, jĭihṅṅ</u><br><u>araĭkṅṅṅ</u> nỳn khan | One big good and beautiful<br>American car of any make. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	thîi <u>thùuk</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything cheaper?
1. dii Good	thîi <u>dii</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything better?
2. suǎj Beautiful, pretty	thîi <u>suǎj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything prettier?
3. phsɛŋ Expensive	thîi <u>phsɛŋ</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything more expensive?
4. jàj Big	thîi <u>jàj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything bigger?
5. lék Small	thîi <u>lék</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything smaller?
6. nâakwâaŋ Wide (Fabric)	thîi <u>nâakwâaŋ</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything wider?
7. màj New	thîi <u>màj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything newer?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Sentence Expansion Drill

#### Cue

#### Continued Pattern

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. prəɛŋsɿifan jàaŋní<br><br>phɛɛŋ paj<br><br>This kind of toothbrush<br>is too expensive. | prəɛŋsɿifan jàaŋní phɛɛŋ paj,<br>thíi thùuk kwàa níi mii máj<br><br>This kind of toothbrush is too<br>expensive. Do you have any-<br>thing cheaper? |
| 2. rót khanníi mâj suǎj<br><br>This car is not<br>beautiful.                               | rót khanníi mâj suǎj, thíi suǎj<br>kwàa níi mii máj<br><br>This car is not beautiful. Do<br>you have anything better looking?                       |
| 3. bāan lǎŋníi lék<br><br>kəən paj<br><br>This house is too<br>small.                      | bāan lǎŋníi lék kəən pāj, thíi jàj<br>kwàa níi mii máj<br><br>This house is too small. Do you<br>have anything bigger?                              |
| 4. phāaníi nāakhēɛp<br><br>kəən paj<br><br>This fabric is too<br>narrow.                   | phāaníi nāakhēɛp kəən paj, thíi<br>kwāaŋ kwàa níi mii máj<br><br>This fabric is too narrow. Do<br>you have anything wider?                          |
| 5. kaŋkəən tuaníi kàw<br><br>paj<br><br>These pants are too<br>old.                        | kaŋkəən tuaníi kàw paj, thíi màj<br>kwàa níi mii máj<br><br>These pants are too old. Do you<br>have anything newer?                                 |
| 6. s̄ya tuaníi jàj paj<br><br>This shirt is too big.                                       | s̄ya tuaníi jàj paj, thíi lék kwàa<br>níi mii máj<br><br>This shirt is too big. Do you<br>have anything smaller?                                    |
| 7. nāŋs̄y lēmníi jâak kəən<br>paj<br><br>This book is too difficult.                       | nāŋs̄y lēmníi jâak paj, thíi n̄aaj<br>kwàa níi mii máj.<br><br>This book is too difficult. Do<br>you have anything easier?                          |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 38.4 EXERCISES

a) Have one student take the part of a store clerk and another that of a customer. Have them go through the routine of purchasing various items, such as:

- (a) a pack of cigarettes, (b) two bars of toilet soap,  
(c) a tube of toothpaste, (d) some matches, etc.

The clerk asks the brand, kind, and size the customer wants. When he is told, he indicates what the price is. Then the customer inquires if there is anything cheaper (better, etc.). Then he gives the clerk a bill and asks for change.

### 38.5 VOCABULARY

aa sii ee	R.C.A.
ajpaanaa	Ipana
an	classifier for inanimate objects
éésphajrin	aspirin
on	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen
òn	soft, tender
ùtnǔn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
bajmáaj	leaf
dóktêe wés	Dr. West
fan	tooth
fòot	a Ford (brand name)
hò	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

hǒm	to smell sweet
jaa	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hǒm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jǐihǒ	brand or trade name
kâan	classifier for matches
kaproon	woman's skirt
khǐit	to strike, scratch
khonnaaj	insider
khonnǒk	outsider or layman
khryǎnjon	engine
khryǎn pèet krapǒn	an electric can opener
khryǎnsákphâa	washing machine
khryǎn tii khàj	an electric (egg) beater
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klètthoon	Gold Flake(name of cigarettes)
klòn	a small carton or plastic box
kôn	bump, cube, bar classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks or coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money
kratàaj	rabbit

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kratìknàm	thermos bottle
làks	Lux (brand name)
lòot	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lûukthóo	peach (a Chinese loan word)
máa	horse
máj	wood
májkhìit (faj)	matches
mét	classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
(khǎoŋ)naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
nákrian naj	Thais educated in Thailand
nákrian nǎok	Thais who were educated abroad
nók	bird
nókjuuŋ	Peacock
nókkêew	Parrot
(khǎoŋ)nǎok	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
ŋenthooŋ	change (money returned)
páak kêe	Parker
phátlom	electric fan
phènsǎŋ	records (phonograph)
præŋ	brush

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prɛɛŋsǎifan	toothbrush
sabùuhǎom	toilet soap
sabùu(láks)	(Lux) soap
sabùu naj	local soap
sabùu nǎok	imported soap
sabùu sákphâa	laundry soap
sabùu thaj	Thai soap
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
satàaŋ	satang
sǎi	polish
sooŋ	classifier for cigarettes or envelope
sooŋcòtmǎaj	envelope
sǎa	tiger
taw	stove
tawkéss	gas stove
tawrǎit	iron (for clothing)
thǎŋ	pail
thiiwii	T.V.
thǎi	classifier for simple equipment
thǎi pèet krapǎŋ	an ordinary can opener
thǎi tii khàj	an ordinary (egg) beater
thonabàt	bank note

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thoon	to give change (money)
thoorathát	T.V.
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
wanlǎŋ	next time



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-NINE

#### 39.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Fruit

khonsýy:	sôm níi khǎaj jaŋŋaj	How much are these oranges?
mêskháa:	lǎo la sǐp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht a kilo.
khonsýy:	kiloo nyŋ mi kii lûuk	How many oranges in a kilo?
mêskháa:	raaw hòk cèt lûuk	Around 6 or 7.
khonsýy:	lǎo la sǐp bàat dâj máj	How about 10 baht a kilo?
mêskháa:	mâj dâj khà	Impossible.
	níi sôm jaŋŋaii nakhá	This is a very good kind of orange.
	rót dii wǎansanít	They have good, unusually sweet flavor.
khonsýy:	ŋán sǐp sǎoŋ bàat kǎlǎewkan na	Then make it 12 baht.
	aw kiloo nyŋ	I'll take one kilo.
	(mêskháa sòn sôm hâj)	(The saleslady hands over the oranges.)
mêskháa:	ca ráp araj ìik májkhá	Anything else?
khonsýy:	sàpparót níi lûuk thǎwraj	How much are these pineapples each?
mêskháa:	sǐi bàat khà	four baht.
khonsýy:	sǎam bàat dâj máj	Is three O.K.?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mêekháa:	mâj dâj khà	Can't do it.
	sii bàat khàat tua	Four baht, no bargaining
khonsýy:	aw lûuk nyn	I'll take one.
	chûaj lýak lûuk diidii hâj dūaj	Pick out a good one for me.
mêekháa:	nfi khà, thánmòt sìp hòk bàat thūan	Here it is. That makes 16 baht exactly altogether.
	(khonsýy sòn baj la róoj hâj mêekháa)	(The buyer hands the saleslady a 100 baht bill.)
mêekháa:	khun mií bénjôj máj khá	You have any smaller bills?
	dichán mâj mií thoon	I don't have any change.
khonsýy:	mâj mií læj khráp	No, I don't have any at all.
mêekháa:	nán rōō sák pradīaw nakhá	Then please wait a minute.
	dichán ca paj lēsk maa hâj	I'll go get some change for you.

### 39.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### Types of Noun Phrases

##### a) Noun + Stative Verb(s)

With this type of construction the reference is non-specific; i.e. it refers to any one or more units of the whole class.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

1. Noun + Stative Verb

rót māj 'new cars'

Here the reference is to a particular type of object as a class.

2. Noun + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Depending on the context, reduplication of the stative verb may result in

(a) 'Softening' the meaning of the stative verb,

phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phàn paj khan nyn

'I saw a whitish car pass by.'

(b) strengthening the meaning of the stative verb, or

rót khanníi māj jāj phao. phǒm jaak dāj rót jāj jāj

'This car is not big enough. I would like a really big car.'

(c) it may indicate that the noun it occurs with is plural.

khaw mi bāan sǎaj sǎaj 'He has beautiful houses.'

In all of these constructions the reference is to general rather than specific objects.

b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb(s)

Reference is usually to one object.

1. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb

Reference is one specific object.

nānsǎy lēm jāj 'the big book'

2. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Reference is any one of a number of objects.

sapparòt lûuk dii dii 'any good pineapple'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

In certain situations reduplication can result in

(a) 'softening' the meaning of the stative verb

chûaj lÿak lûuk jàj jàj hâj lûuk nÿn

'Please choose a rather large one for me.'

### 39.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

1. sôm sǎam	{	lûuk baj phǒn	3 oranges
2. sôm oo nÿn	{	lûuk baj phǒn	1 pomelo
3. klûaj nÿn wǐi	{	baj lûuk phǒn	1 bunch of bananas
<u>or</u> sǐi	{	baj lûuk phǒn	or 4 bananas
4. mamûaŋ sǒŋ	{	lûuk phǒn baj	2 mangoes
5. maŋkhút nÿn	{	lûuk phǒn baj	1 mangosteen
6. chomphûu sǒŋ	{	lûuk phǒn baj	2 rose apples

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. tɛɛŋmoo nỳn	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l\u0169uk} \\ \text{ph\u0111n} \\ \text{baj} \end{array} \right.$	1 watermelon
8. malakoo nỳn	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l\u0169uk} \\ \text{ph\u0111n} \\ \text{baj} \end{array} \right.$	1 papaya
9. laaŋsàat nỳn or	ch\u0111o	1 bunch of langsa or
s\u012bs\u012bi	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l\u0169uk} \\ \text{ph\u0111n} \\ \text{baj} \end{array} \right.$	14 langsa
10. th\u0169rian nỳn	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{l\u0169uk} \\ \text{ph\u0111n} \\ \text{baj} \end{array} \right.$	1 durian
11. s\u0101par\u0111t nỳn	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ph\u0111n} \\ \text{l\u0169uk} \\ \text{baj} \end{array} \right.$	1 pineapple
12. n\u0111o nỳn  <u>or</u> h\u0101a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ch\u0111o} \\ \text{phuan} \\ \text{ph\u0111n} \\ \text{baj} \\ \text{l\u0169uk} \end{array} \right.$	1 bunch of rambuttans  5 rambuttans

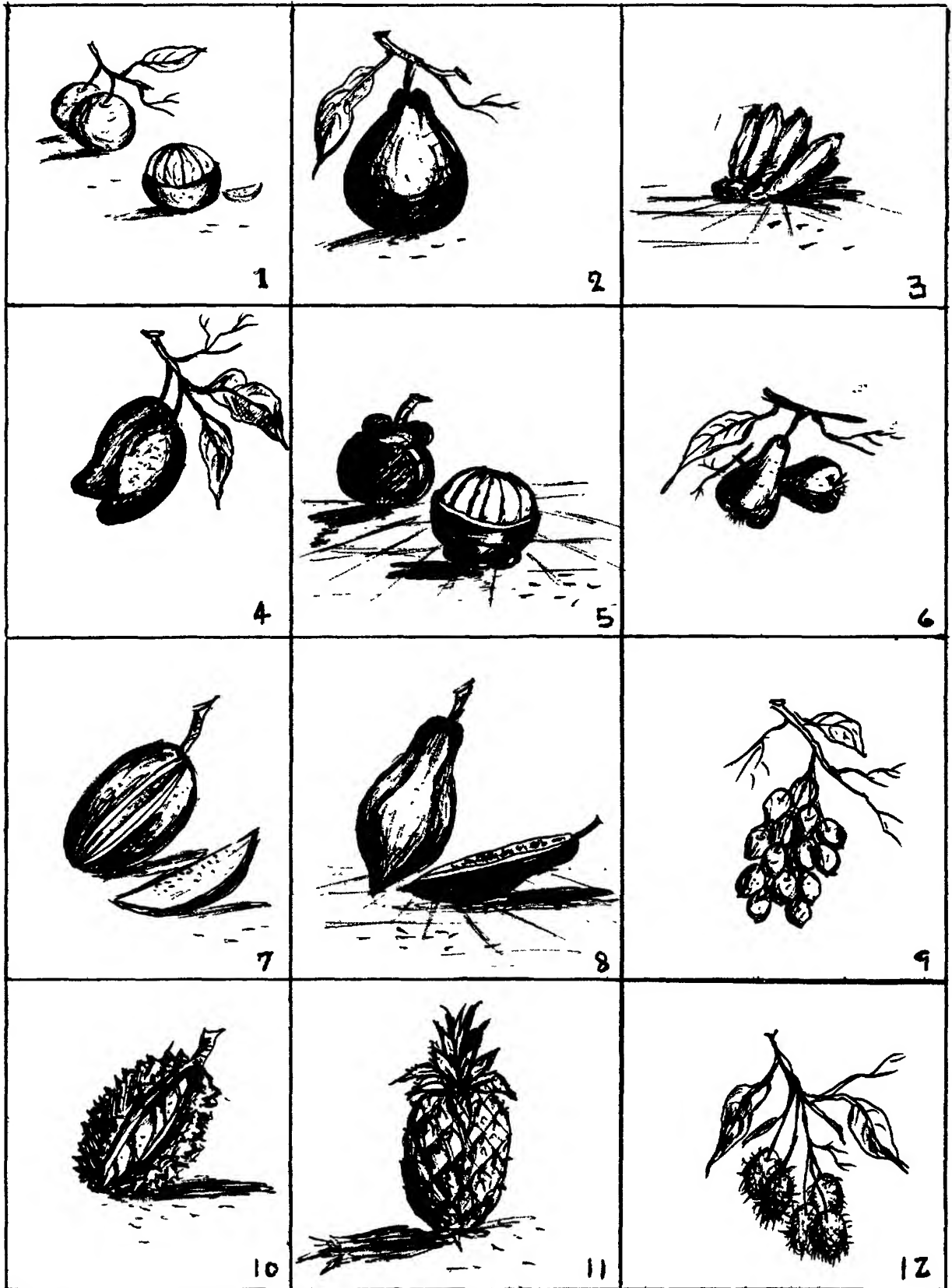
## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Sentence Construction Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sôm, jaŋŋaj	sôm nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these oranges? (by weight or quantity)
2. sôm oo, lûuk	sôm oo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are these grapefruit apiece?
3. klûaj, jaŋŋaj	klûaj nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these bananas?
4. mamûaŋ, lûuk	mamûaŋ nîi lûuk la thawràj How much are these mangoes apiece?
5. maŋkhút, jaŋŋaj	maŋkhút nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these mangosteens?
6. chomphûu, jaŋŋaj	chomphûu nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these rose apples?
7. tseŋmoo, lûuk	tseŋmoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are watermelons each?
8. malakoo, lûuk	malakoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are papayas apiece?
9. laaŋsàat, jaŋŋaj	laaŋsàat nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell langsa?
10. thúrian, jaŋŋaj	thúrian nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell durians?
11. sàparót, lûuk	sàparót nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are pineapples apiece?
12. ŋó, jaŋŋaj	ŋó nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell rambuttans?

THAI BASIC COURSE



THAI FRUIT

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>dii dii</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a good one for me.
1. ñaam ñaam pretty	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>ñaam ñaam</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a pretty one for me.
2. wǎan wǎan sweet	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>wǎan wǎan</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a very sweet one for me.
3. jàj jàj big	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a rather big one for me.
4. sùk sùk ripe	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>sùk sùk</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a really ripe one for me.
5. sòt sòt fresh	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>sòt sòt</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a really fresh one for me.

### d) Expansion Drill

1. sàparót lûuk dii dii sàparót lûuk dii dii wǎan wǎan	A good pineapple A good and sweet pineapple
2. sàparót lûuk too too sàparót lûuk too too wǎan wǎan	A big pineapple A big and sweet pineapple
3. thúrian lûuk too too thúrian lûuk too too rót dii dii	A big durian A big, good-tasting durian



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. mǎnkhút lûuk ñaamñaam<br/>mǎnkhút lûuk ñaamñaam<br/>rót dīi dīi</p> | <p>A pretty mangosteen<br/>A pretty, good-tasting<br/>mangosteen</p> |
| <p>5. mamûan lûuk too too<br/>mamûan lûuk too too<br/>sùk sùk</p>         | <p>A big mango<br/>A big, ripe mango</p>                             |
| <p>6. mamûan lûuk too too<br/>mamûan lûuk too too<br/>sòt sòt</p>         | <p>A big mango<br/>A big, fresh mango</p>                            |

### e) Progressive Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>               | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>sàparòt</u> lûuk dīi<br/>dīi hâj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good pineapple<br/>for me.</p>                                   |
| 1. sôm oo                | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>sôm oo</u> lûuk dīi dīi<br/>hâj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good pomelo for<br/>me.</p>                                       |
| 2. mamûan, jàj, sǎam     | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>mamûan</u> lûuk baj <u>jàj</u><br/><u>jàj</u> hâj <u>sǎam</u> baj</p> <p>Please choose three (rather)<br/>big mangoes for me.</p> |
| 3. thúrian, rót dīi, nÿn | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>thúrian</u> <u>rót dīi dīi</u><br/>hâj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good durian for<br/>me.</p>                                |
| 4. jàj,<br>sǒn           | <p>chûaj lÿak thúrian baj <u>jàj</u> <u>jàj</u><br/>rót dīi dīi hâj sǒn lûuk</p> <p>Please choose two big and good<br/>durians for me.</p>         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. tɛɛŋmoo,  
wǎan, nỳŋ                      chûaj lỳak tɛɛŋmoo lûuk jàj  
jàj wǎan wǎan hâj lûuk nỳŋ  
Please choose a big sweet  
watermelon for me.
6. maŋkhút, ɲaam, nỳŋ kiloo                      chûaj maŋkhút lûuk ɲaam ɲaam  
hâj kiloo nỳŋ  
Please choose a kilo of pretty  
mangoes for me.

### f) Progressive Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>           | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|----------------------|--|
|                      | chûaj lỳak <u>sàparót</u> lûuk dii dii<br>hâj lûuk nỳŋ<br>Please choose a good pineapple<br>for me.          |
| 1. sôm oo<br>pomelo  | chûaj lỳak <u>sôm oo</u> lûuk dii dii<br>hâj lûuk nỳŋ<br>Please choose a good pomelo for<br>me.              |
| 2. thúrian<br>durian | chûaj lỳak <u>thúrian</u> lûuk dii dii<br>hâj lûuk nỳŋ<br>Please choose a good durian for<br>me.             |
| 3. sǎam<br>three     | chûaj lỳak thúrian lûuk dii dii<br>hâj <u>sǎam</u> lûuk<br>Please choose three good durians<br>for me.       |
| 4. jàj<br>big        | chûaj lỳak thúrian lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u><br>hâj sǎam lûuk<br>Please choose three rather big<br>durians for me. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. jàj, rôt dii<br><br>big, of good flavor     | chûaj lỳak thúrìan lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u><br><u>rôt dii</u> dii hâj sǎam lûuk<br><br>Please choose three rather big<br>delicious durians for me.       |
| 6. sýy<br><br>buy                              | chûaj <u>sýy</u> thúrìan lûuk jàj jàj<br>rôt dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk<br><br>Please buy three rather big<br>delicious durians for me.                  |
| 7. maṅkhút, ṅaam<br>mangosteens<br><br>pretty  | chûaj sýy <u>maṅkhút</u> lûuk <u>ṅaam ṅaam</u><br>rôt dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk<br><br>Please buy three pretty, good<br>tasting mangosteens for me.     |
| 8. nỳṅ kiloo<br><br>one kilo                   | chûaj sýy maṅkhút lûuk ṅaam ṅaam<br>rôt dii dii hâj <u>kiloo nỳṅ</u><br><br>Please buy a kilo of pretty,<br>delicious mangosteens for me.           |
| 9. síp bàat<br><br>ten baht                    | chûaj sýy maṅkhút lûuk ṅaam ṅaam<br>rôt dii dii hâj <u>síp bàat</u><br><br>Please buy ten baht worth of<br>pretty, delicious mangosteens<br>for me. |
| 10. mamuân, too<br>wǎan<br>mango, large, sweet | chûaj sýy <u>mamuân</u> lûuk <u>too too</u><br><u>wǎan wǎan</u> hâj síp bàat<br><br>Please buy ten baht of sweet,<br>big mangoes for me.            |
| 11. malakoo, sùk, too<br><br>papaya, ripe, big | chûaj sýy <u>malakoo</u> lûuk too too<br><u>sùk sùk</u> hâj síp bàat<br><br>Please buy ten baht of big, ripe<br>papayas for me.                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. khun mâj mi <b>i</b> bĕnjĕj  rĕkhráp  You don't have any change?	lĕek  to change	khun mâj mi <b>i</b> bĕnjĕj rĕkhráp  phĕm capaj <u>lĕek</u> maa hâj  You don't have any change?  I'll go get some change for you.
2. khun ca thaan  kaafĕ rĕkhráp  You'd like a cup of coffee?	sýy  to buy	khun ca thaan kaafĕ rĕkhráp  phĕm ca paj <u>sýy</u> maa hâj  You'd like a cup of coffee?  I'll go and buy some for you.
3. khun mâj mi  nánsýy rĕkhráp  You don't have a book?	aw  to get	khun mâj mi nánsýy rĕkhráp  phĕm ca paj <u>aw</u> maa hâj  You don't have a book?  I'll go get one for you.
4. khun tĕnkaan thĕksĭi  rĕkhráp  Do you want a taxi?	rĭak  call	khun tĕnkaan thĕksĭi rĕkhráp  phĕm ca paj <u>rĭak</u> maa hâj  Do you want a taxi?  I'll go and call one for you.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>5. khun tŏŋkaan mŏo<br/>rĕkhráp<br/>Do you want a doctor?</p>       | <p>taam<br/>to send<br/>for, to<br/>get (a<br/>person)</p> | <p>khun tŏŋkaan mŏo rĕkhráp<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>taam</u> maa háj<br/>Do you want a doctor?<br/>I'll go get one for<br/>you.</p>                       |
| <p>6. khun ca nân máj<br/>Would you like to<br/>sit down?</p>          | <p>aw kâwîi<br/>get a<br/>chair</p>                        | <p>khun ca nân máj<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>aw kâwîi</u><br/>maa háj<br/>Would you like to<br/>sit down?<br/>I'll bring a chair<br/>for you.</p>           |
| <p>7. khun ca thaam máj<br/>Would you like to eat?</p>                 | <p>aw<br/>get</p>  | <p>khun ca thaam máj<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>aw</u> maa háj<br/>Would you like to eat?<br/>I'll bring something<br/>for you.</p>                          |
| <p>8. khun ca lêek nŏn máj<br/>Would you like to change<br/>money?</p> | <p>lêek<br/>change</p>                                     | <p>khun ca lêek nŏn máj<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>lêek</u> maa<br/>háj<br/>Would you like to<br/>change money?<br/>I'll go and change some<br/>for you.</p> |

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phŏm mâj mií bĕnjŏj. phŏm ca tŏŋ paj lêek nŏn  
I don't have small bank notes. I'll have to go change  
some money.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. khun mi**i** b**é**nj**ô**j máj. kh**ô** l**ê**sk sák r**ó**oj bàat.  
Do you have any change? Please change a hundred Baht.
3. khun mi**i** s**è**et sat**à**an máj. kh**ô** l**ê**sk sák h**â**a bàat  
Do you have any change? Could I have change for five Baht?
4. ch**û**aj paj l**ê**sk n**en** maa h**â**j sák j**î**is**ì**p bàat  
Please go and get twenty Baht change for me.
5. ph**ô**m mi**i** n**en** d**o**ol**â**a j**ù** j**î**is**ì**p r**î**an. ca l**ê**sk pen n**en**thaj d**â**j th**â**wr**à**j  
I have twenty dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?
6. khun s**â**ap máj kh**r**áp w**â**a th**ě**wn**í**i mi**i** th**î**l**ê**skn**en** máj.  
Do you know if there are any money changers around here?
7. chaawnaa aw kh**â**aw paj l**ê**sk maa pen kh**ô**ŋch**á**j  
The farmers took the rice and traded it for things.
8. j**à**a aw ph**im**s**ě**en paj l**ê**sk k**à**p k**ly**a.  
Don't trade (exchange) smelling salts for salt.  
(Do not trade valuable things for worthless things.  
A Thai proverb)

### 1) Expansion Drill

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. l <b>ê</b> sk                           | exchange                  |
| l <b>ê</b> sk k <b>à</b> p                 | exchange with             |
| l <b>ê</b> sk ka kh <b>ô</b> ŋ             | exchange with things      |
| l <b>ê</b> sk n <b>en</b> ka kh <b>ô</b> ŋ | exchange money for things |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. lĕk exchange  
lĕk nĕn exchange money  
lĕk nĕn sĭp rĭan (I) want to exchange ten dollars.
3. lĕk exchange  
khŏo lĕk Please exchange.  
khŏo lĕk bĕnjŏj Please change for small bank notes.  
khŏo lĕk bĕnjŏj sák Please give me 100 Baht change.  
róoj bàat
4. lĕk exchange  
khŏo lĕk Please exchange.  
khŏo lĕk sĕetsatàan Please exchange for coins.  
khŏo lĕk sĕetsatàan sák Please exchange five Baht into  
hāa bàat coins?
5. lĕk exchange  
lĕk kan trade  
lĕk rŏt kan trade cars  
lĕk rŏt kan, aw māj How would you like to trade cars?
6. lĕk exchange  
aw khāaw paj lĕk Take rice and exchange it.  
aw khāaw paj lĕk ka Take rice and exchange it for  
khŏoncháj things.  
chaawnaa aw khāaw paj The farmers trade rice for  
lĕk ka khŏoncháj things.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. lĕsk exchange  
aw paj lĕsk Take it and exchange it.  
aw paj lĕsk maa been to exchange something  
aw khĕaw paj lĕsk maa has been to exchange rice for  
pen khŏŏcháj useful things
8. lĕsk exchange  
aw paj lĕsk Take it and exchange it.  
aw rŏt kĕw paj lĕsk Take the old car to exchange it.  
aw rŏt kĕw paj lĕsk maa have been to trade the old car  
pen rŏt mĕj in for a new one

### Exercise (on lĕsk)

1. chaawnaa mi tĕe khĕaw. thĕa khĕw tŏnkaan khŏŏcháj tĕe khĕw mĕj mi nĕn sŏy. khĕw ca tham janŋaj  
A farmer has only rice. If he wants other things but he doesn't have money to buy them, what can he do?
2. khun ca tŏn hĕj nĕn khĕa thĕksĕi sĭphĕa bĕat. khun mi tĕe baj la rŏŏj. thĕksĕi mĕj mi thŏn. khun ca tham janŋaj  
You have to pay fifteen Baht for taxi fare. You have only a 100 Baht bank note. The driver doesn't have any change. What do you do?
3. khun mi tĕe nĕn đŏn lĕa. khun tŏnkaan nĕn bĕat, khun ca tham janŋaj  
You have only dollars. You want some baht. What do you do?
4. thĕa nĕn đŏn lĕa thĕwkĕp jĭisĭp bĕat. thĕa khun mi nĕn hĕasĭp đŏn lĕa, khun ca lĕsk nĕn bĕat đĕj thĕwrĕj  
If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht; if you have fifty dollars, how many baht do you get?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khun phíchaj ca paj ameerikaa. kháw aw nən paj lēsk thīi thanakhaan hāa phan bàat. thāa nỳn đoon lāa thāw kàp jīisíp bàat. khun phíchaj dāj nən đoon lāa thāwrāj

Mr. Pichai is going to America. He went to the bank to exchange money for 5,000 baht. If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht, how many dollars does Mr. Pichai get?

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǒm sýy khǒn raakhaa síp pèet bàat. phǒm hāj nən kháw paj jīisíp bàat. kháw thoon nən hāj phǒm sǒn bàat.

I made a purchase for 18 baht. I gave him twenty baht. He gave me two baht change.

2. khāa thēksīi síp sǒn bàat. phǒm hāj nən thēksīi paj síp hāa bàat kháw thoon maa hāj phǒm sǒn bàat. kháw thoon nən hāj phǒm khàat paj nỳn bàat.

The taxi fare is 12 baht. I gave the driver 15 baht. He gave me two baht change. He shortchanged me one baht.

3. phǒm mīi tēs baj la rǒoj, māj mīi bēnjōj. mēskhāa māj mīi nən thoon, phǒm lǒej tōn paj lēsk bēnjōj maa hāj kháw

I had only one hundred baht bank notes. I didn't have any smaller bank notes. The vendor didn't have any change. So, I had to go get some change for her.

4. khun khuan ca dāj nenthoon sǒn bàat tēs kháw thoon hāj khun sǒn bàat hāsíp. kháw thoon nən hāj khun kəen maa hāsíp sataan

You should have got two baht change but he gave you the change for two baht and fifty satang. He gave you fifty satang too much in change.

5. khǒn raakhaa thánmòt pèetsíp sīi bàat. phǒm hāj nən kháw paj rǒoj nỳn. phǒm khuan ca dāj nenthoon thāwrāj

The goods cost altogether 84 baht. I gave him 100 baht. How much change should I get?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. thoon  | To give change                                    |
| thoonnen  | To give change                                    |
| thoon nen hâj khun  | To give you change                                |
| thoon nen hâj khun<br>săam baaat                              | To give you 3 baht change                         |
| kháw thoön nen hâj<br>khun sǎam baaat                         | He gave you 3 baht change.                        |
| 2. thoön  | To give change                                    |
| thoön maa   | To give change (to me)                            |
| thoön maa hâj phǒm  | To give me change                                 |
| thoön maa hâj phǒm<br>săam baaat                              | To give me 3 baht change                          |
| tôn thoön maa hâj<br>phǒm sǎam baaat                          | Should give me 3                                  |
| khun tôn thoön maa hâj<br>phǒm sǎam baaat, thùuk<br>mǎj khráp | You should have given me 3 baht<br>change, right? |
| 3. khàat  | To be lacking                                     |
| khàat paj   | To be lacking                                     |
| khàat paj sǒn baaat   | Two baht too little                               |
| nen khàat paj sǒn<br>baat                                     | Two baht too little change                        |
| thoön nen maa khàat<br>paj sǒn baaat                          | Gave 2 baht too little in change                  |
| thoön nen maa hâj<br>phǒm khàat paj sǒn<br>baat               | Gave me 2 baht too little in<br>change.           |
| khun thoön nen maa<br>hâj phǒm khàat paj<br>sǒn baaat         | You shortchanged me 2 baht.                       |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. khun sýy phâamăj thánmòt săamróoj síp bàat.  
khun hâj baj la róoj khonkhăaj sîi baj.  
khonkhăaj thoön nən maa hâj khun pèst síp bàat. kháw thoön  
nən hâj khun khàat paj thâwràj.

You bought 310 baht worth of Thai silk. You gave the salesman four 100 baht bank notes. The salesman gave you 80 baht change. How much did he shortchange you?

5. khun sýy khǒon raakhaa săam bàat khun hâj baj la hâa khonkhăaj paj. kháw thoön maa hâj khun săam bàat. kháw thoön nən kəen maa thâwràj.

You bought some things for 3 baht. You gave the salesman one 5 baht bank note. He gave you 3 baht change. How much extra change did you get?

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	ca <u>ráp araj</u> ìik máj Would you like anything else?
1. sýy araj	ca <u>sýy araj</u> ìik máj Would you like to buy anything else?
2. tham araj	ca <u>tham araj</u> ìik máj Would you like to do anything else?
3. paj năj	ca <u>paj năj</u> ìik máj Would you like to go anywhere else?
4. paj hăa khraj	ca <u>paj hăa khraj</u> ìik máj Would you like to see anyone else?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. duu araj

ca duu araj ìik máj.

Would you like to look at anything else?

6. paj thúra thĭnăj

ca paj thúra thĭnăj ìik máj

Would you like to go (on business) anywhere else?

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (ìik: 'else')

1. khun paj hăa khăw lésw. khun ca paj hăa khraj ìik

You have seen him. Is there anybody else you'll see?

2. nŏkcàak khun cŏon lésw, khun rúucák khraj ìik bân

Besides John, who else do you know?

3. sýy phăa sèt lésw, khun jàak ca sýy araj ìik máj

After we finish shopping for material, is there anything else you'd like to buy?

4. khĭan còtmăaj sèt lésw, khun ca tham araj ìik

After you have finished writing letters, what else are you going to do?

5. paj thúra thĭnân sèt lésw, khun ca tŏn paj thĭnăj ìik máj

After you have finished your business there, do you have to go anywhere else?

n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khăw mi phanrajaa sŭaj lé kèn

He has a beautiful and clever wife.

2. khăw mi bânansŭaj

He has a beautiful house.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. kháw dâj khoncháj dii  
He has (got) good servants.
4. kháw mií lûuksăaw sŭaj jùu khonnŷ  
He has a beautiful daughter.
5. thŷinân mií ráanaahăan dii jùu ráan nŷ  
There is a good restaurant there.
6. thŷinân mií ráankhăajkhŏŋ jàj jùu ráan nŷ  
There is a big store there.

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'plurality')

1. kháw mií bân sŭaj suăj lăaj lăŋ  
He has many beautiful houses.
2. kháw mií rót ameerikan jàj jàj lăaj khan  
He has many big American cars.
3. kháw mií lûuknŏŋ kèn kèn dii dii lăaj khon  
He has many good and competent employees.
4. kháw mií khŏŋcháj dii dii lăaj jàŋ.  
He has many nice things to use.
5. kháw rúucàk ráanaahăan dii dii thùuk thùuk lăaj hèn  
He knows many inexpensive good restaurants.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. thĭnĭn mĭ roonriian māj māj dii dii juu lǎaj roon

There are many good new schools there.

7. thĭnĭn mĭ khǒon dii dii thùuk thùuk hāj lĭyak lǎaj jàan

There are many kinds of good, inexpensive things to choose from there.

### p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'generality')

1. phǒm jàak dāj nǎnsǎy dii dii sák lĕm

I want to get a good book.

2. kháw tǒnkaan phĭyan dii dii sák khon

He needs a good friend.

3. phǒm ca sýy rót ameerikan khan jàj jàj sák khan

I'll buy a big American car.

4. chŭaj sýy phĕamǎj sŭaj sŭaj dii dii sĭi dam hāj sák sǒon lǎa

Please buy two yards of good beautiful Thai silk, in black for me.

5. phǒm jàak dāj lĭuknǒon dii dii kĕnkĕn sák khonnyn

I would like to get a competent good person to work for me.

### q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication strengthening of the base meanings)

1. rótkhannĭi māj jàj phoo. phǒm jàak dāj rót jàj jàj

This car is not big enough. I would like a big car.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. bâan lằnńí jàj kəen paj. phǒm jàak dâj bâan lék lék.  
This house is too big. I would like a small house.
3. nánsǎy lêmńí jàak paj nòoj. phǒm jàak dâj nánsǎy n̄âaj n̄âaj  
This book is a little bit too difficult. I would like an easy one.
4. phâa jàanńí phəeŋ paj. phǒm jǎak dâj jàan thùuk thùuk  
This kind of material is too expensive. I would like a cheap kind.
5. kaafəe thûaj ní māj rón léej. phǒm jàak dâj kaafəe rónrón  
This cup of coffee is not hot. I'd like hot coffee.

### r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication softening the base meaning)

1. phǒm jàak dâj rót dii dii sák khan nyŋ  
I would like to get a fairly good car.
2. chûaj sýy mamûan lûuk tootoo hâj sǐp bàat  
Please buy me 50 Baht of rather big mangoes.
3. phûujǎn khonnán pen khon dam dam tɛe māj dam mâak  
That lady is a rather dark person but not very dark.
4. phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phàn paj khannŋ  
I saw a whitish car pass by.
5. phǒm cam dâj wâa nánsǎy lêmńán  
pen nánsǎy lêm lék lék baan baan.  
I remember that that book is a rather small thin book.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (classifier specifies the object)

1. khun chōp rōt khan nǎj. khan lék rý khan jàj  
Which car do you like? The small one or the big one?
2. kháw ca chāw lǎn nǎj. lǎn sǐkhǎaw rý sǐkhǎaw  
Which house is he going to rent? The green one or the white one?
3. nǎnsǎy khōn khun lēm nǎj, lēm kàw rý lēm màj  
Which book is yours? The old one or the new one?
4. khun ca aw pàakkaa an thùuk rý an phēsɛn  
Does he want the cheap pen or the expensive one?
5. fēsɛn khōn kháw khon nǎj (phūujǎn) khon sǎaj rý khon màj sǎaj  
Which one is his girl friend? The pretty one or the not (so) pretty one?

t) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Single Adjective (Indicating kind or type)	Reduplicated Adjective (Indicating quality)
1. mamûan sùk Ripe mangoes	mamûan sùksùk Mangoes which are (rather) ripe
2. kaafēs rón Hot coffee	kaafēs rónróon The coffee which is quite hot
3. nám jen Cold water	nám jenjen Water which is really cold

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 4. khǒŋkàw  | khǒŋ kàwkàw   |
| Antiques    | Old things    |
| 5. khǒŋwǎan | khǒŋ wǎanwǎan |
| Dessert     | Sweet things  |

### 39.3 EXERCISES

- 1) Pretend you are shopping for fruit and ask for
  - (a) 2 oranges and a bunch of bananas,
  - (b) six mangosteens and one small watermelon,
  - (c) 3 ripe mangoes,
  - (d) 1 large papaya,
  - (e) one small durian,
  - (f) a sweet pineapple,
  - (g) a bunch of rambuttans.
  
- 2) Pretend you are shopping and say to the salesperson  
" Please choose for me \_\_\_\_\_ "
  - (a) a good orange,
  - (b) 3 sweet pineapples,
  - (c) one large durian,
  - (d) a big, sweet watermelon,
  - (e) 2 kilos of beautiful mangosteens,
  - (f) 3 baht worth of big ripe papayas,
  - (g) 1 bunch of ripe bananas,
  - (h) 3 rose apples,
  - (i) 2 bunches of good rambuttans,
  - (j) 1 bunch of langsa.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- 3) Student A says to Student B, "Where are you going?"  
Student B replies, "I'm going to buy \_\_\_\_\_ for you."  
Use different kinds of objects in your reply.
- 4) Student A: "I have \_\_\_\_\_ dollars. How much Thai  
money will I get in exchange for it?"  
Student B: "You'll get \_\_\_\_\_ baht."

### 39.4 VOCABULARY

baj la hâa	5 baht bank note
bénjôj	small bill (change)
chomphûu	rose apple
chôo	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
doolâa	dollar
fœn	girl or boy friend
hók cèt	6 or 7
kœn	too much
khàat	shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khǒncháj	things for use
klûaj	banana
laansàat	bangsa (small fruit)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lÿak	to choose, pick out, select, elect

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

malakoo	papaya (fruit)
mamûaŋ	mango (fruit)
maŋkhút	mangosteen (fruit)
mêekháa	salesperson (female)
ŋənthoon	change
ŋó	rambuttan (fruit)
phíchaj	Phichai (male first name)
phimsĕen	smelling salts
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaj	fruit
phuaŋ	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
ráp	to take on, to eat (something)
rĭan	coin, dollars
rót	flavor
sák	a little, a bit
sák pradĭaw	a minute
sanĭt	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
săpparót	pineapple
sèet sataaŋ	change (in coin)
sôm	orange
sôm oo	pomelo
sòt	fresh (of fruit, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sùk	ripe
tɛɛŋmoo	watermelon
tháŋmòt	altogether
thíilêskɲen	place to exchange money
thûan	even, in round numbers
thúrian	durian (fruit)
wǎan	sweet (in flavor)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON FORTY

#### 40.0 BASIC DIALOG: Banking and Shopping Trip

- A: khun mi bẻnjỏj bẻan máj      Do you have any change?
- B: mi, tẻe máj thẻy rỏỏj  
bẻat      Yes, but not as much as 100 Baht.
- A: ẻn, khỏỏ jyy kỏỏn sẻk  
jẻisẻp bẻat, dẻj máj      Well, could I borrow 20 Baht, then?
- khỏỏpkhun mẻak      Thank you.
- B: wannẻi ca paj nẻj rẻkhrẻp      You are going somewhere today?
- A: ca paj thanakhaan      To the bank.
- B: paj fẻak ẻn rẻkhrẻp      To deposit money?
- A: plẻaw, ca paj bẻẻk ẻn      No, to get some money out.
- kẻp ca phaa phẻn farẻn  
paj lẻẻk ẻnthẻj dẻj      And I am also taking a 'farang'  
friend to change some money,
- phỏỏ ca paj sẻy khỏỏn kan      Because we are going shopping.
- phẻn khẻw jẻak sẻy phẻamẻj  
thẻj, khẻnẻn      She wants some Thai silk, a  
silver bowl,
- lẻẻkwỏỏ chamsalẻt thẻi tham  
dẻj mẻj      And a wooden salad bowl.

#### 40.1 BASIC DIALOG: (Part 2)

- A: khun rẻucẻk rẻandiẻi thẻi  
mẻj phẻẻn nẻk bẻan máj      You know any good and inexpen-  
sive shops?
- B: rẻan sẻnkhẻathẻj ẻj khrẻp      Yes, the "Thai merchandise"  
shop.
- khẻw mi khỏỏnthẻj dẻiẻi  
sẻjẻsẻjẻ hẻj lyẻk jẻ      They have a large selection of  
beautiful and good things.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- fǐimyy kháw dii mâak phró  
kháw mií chhâaṅ diidii      Their work is very good  
because they have good artisans.
- A: ciṅná, phêṅ nýk òok      That's true, it just occurred  
to me.
- B: əə, khun ca phàan ráan  
nanaaphân máj      By the way, are you going to  
go by "Nana Phan" shop?
- A: phàan, ca fàak sýy araj  
bâaṅ      Yes, could I get you something?
- B: chûaj sýy thàanfajchǎaj  
hâj dūaj      Could you buy some flashlight  
batteries for me?
- A: aw kǐi kōon      How many do you want?
- B: sǒoṅ kōon, léswkô  
lòotfajfáa hòksíp  
rəəṅthian sǎam lòot  
nǐkhráp ṅəṅkhâakhǒoṅ      Here's the money.
- A: jâṅ mâj tōoṅ hâj rəkháp  
phró jaṅ mâj sâap wâa  
thâwráj      Don't bother about it yet,  
because I don't know how much  
it's going to be.

### 40.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) bèek ṅəṅ means 'to get money (from the bank)' either  
by (a) taking money out of an account: thəoṅ ṅəṅ or  
(b) by cashing a check: aw chék paj khýn ṅəṅ
- b) thýṅ is used to indicate that a certain point, degree,  
or amount has been reached.  
When used as a main verb, it means 'to reach, get to' or  
'to be as much as (with amounts)'.  
mií bəṅjôj təə máj thýṅ róoj bàat  
I have change but not as much as 100 baht.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) jé, jé, jéjé means 'to be a great deal, a lot, plenty.' It frequently replaces mâak in colloquial speech in the sense of 'large number or quantity', but not in the sense of 'very'.

kháw mii khǒŋ diidi jé 'He has lots of good things.'

- d) fǐi myy means (a) 'craftmanship' as in tó tua nii fǐimyy dii

'This table is well made (good craftsmanship)' and (b) 'manual skill' châaŋ fǐi myy dii 'a skilled craftsman'. Note that kháw fǐimyy dii and fǐimyy kháw dii mean the same thing. (See 37.2b)

- e) kòŋ in the sentence khǒŋ jyyim kòŋ is used to emphasize the fact that the loan is to be of very short duration. (The speaker is emphasizing that he really doesn't need a loan, but there seems to be no other solution, since the other person doesn't have change for his bank note.)
- f) sák (sàk) means 'merely, just, as little as'. It normally precedes a number or a quantitative expression and implies that the speaker considers the number or amount referred to as not very large.

Borrower: khǒŋ jyyim nən sák rǒŋ bàat

'Could I borrow 100 baht?' (I'm sure you will let me have it, since it's such a small amount.)

tâŋ means 'as much as, as many as'. It is used in the same types of constructions as sák but it implies that the speaker considers the amount referred to as quite large, hence the prospective lender might respond to the above request with

tâŋ rǒŋ bàat chiao rǎ 'a hundred baht!'

(That's a lot of money!)

- (g) In sentences like chûaj sýy thaan fajchaaŋ hâj dūaj, dūaj has the meaning 'since you are going to be doing something anyway, it won't be too much trouble for you to do me a favor too, would it?'



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

h) ɲaj is used when pointing to something that has been sought.

A: khun coon khon nǎj 'Which one's John?'

B: khon nán ɲaj (lá) 'That one. (pointing at him).'

### 40.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) châaŋ means a person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds like the following:

châaŋ tàt phǒm 'barber': châaŋ + tàt phǒm 'to cut hair'

châaŋ tàt sýa 'tailor': châaŋ + tàt sýa 'to cut (out) clothing'

châaŋ thoon 'jeweler': châaŋ + thoon 'gold'

châaŋ thàaj rûup 'photographer': châaŋ + thàaj rûup 'take pictures'

châaŋ máaj 'carpenter': châaŋ + máaj 'wood'

châaŋ thǒm 'nielloware maker': châaŋ + thǒm 'make nielloware'

châaŋ kèsalàk 'carver': châaŋ + kèsalàk 'to carve'

b) Completive verbs<sup>1</sup> in Thai are somewhat similar to certain types of adverbs in English that occur with verbs and form constructions having a completely different meaning, such as figure out, bring up, etc., except that in Thai the completive verb usually indicates that the action referred to in the main verb was brought to conclusion, thus khít 'to think' and khít òok 'to figure out'. If the result of the action is unsuccessful, the negative is placed before the completive, not the main verb:

khít mâj òok 'didn't succeed in figuring it out'

jâak mâak. phǒm khít mâj òok 'It's very difficult.

I can't figure it out.

phǒm nyk mâj òok wâa kháw jùu thfinǎj

'I can't recall where he lives.'

---

<sup>1</sup>Noss, page 125 ff.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

c) In English use of the personal pronoun immediately after its noun antecedent, such as Mary she, or my friend he, etc. is considered substandard English. This is not the case in Thai. Examples of this type (in the third person) are very common. The choice of pronoun is dependent on the degree of intimacy and the relative status levels of the speaker and the person referred to.

(a) phŷan kháw                      '(my) friend he'  
not intimate, about equal status

(b) lŷuk phŷm kɛɛ<sup>1</sup>                      'my children they'  
intimate, equal status

(c) khun prapâat thân                      'Mr. Prapas he'  
Least intimate, superior status (rank or age)  
to speaker

d) Borrow and lend are related in Thai in much the same way as in English. Observe the examples below:

Subject	<u>khŷo</u>	<u>jyym</u>	Object	Lender	(Amount)
khun A	khŷo	jyym	ŋen	khun B	10 bàat
Mr. A	asks to	borrow	money	from Mr. B	10 baht
'Mr. A asks Mr. B for the loan of 10 baht.'					

Compare the above with this:

Subject	<u>hâj</u>	Object	Recipient	<u>jyym</u>	(Amount)
khun A	hâj	ŋen	khun B	jyym	5 bàat
Mr. A	gave	money	(to) Mr. B	to borrow	5 baht
'Mr. A lent Mr. B five baht.'					

---

<sup>1</sup>Noss, page 100 ff.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) fàak is used to indicate that you are entrusting some task to another person or something to an institution.

(NP)	<u>fàak</u>	(NP)	Verb Phrase
(phǒm)	fàak	(khun)	sýy jaa dûaj
(I)	entrust	(you)	to buy medicine (for me) too
'Could you buy some medicine (for me) too.'			

In sentences like the following:

phǒm ca sýy sýa sǔaj sǔaj paj fàak phanrajaaj phǒm  
 'I'll buy pretty dresses to give to my wife',  
fàak means only 'to give to'.

- f) The following construction is used to indicate what material an object is made of:

NP	tham	dûaj	Material
tó tuaníi	tham	dûaj	máaj
'This table is made of wood.'			

Other materials such as nɛn 'silver', máaj sàk 'teak', lèk 'iron', kradàat 'paper', or kracòk 'glass'.

The construction above is also used in a limited number of cases to indicate the instrument that was used in making something, as in this example:

krapǎw bajnán tham dûaj myy 'That bag is hand-made.'

In place of myy, khryaŋ(càk) 'machine' could be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 40.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw, nən, róój bàat He, money, 100 Baht	<u>kháw mii nən thǎy rój bàat máj</u> Does he have as much as 100 Baht?
2. khun, bənjǎj sìp bàat you, change, ten Baht	<u>khun mii bənjǎj thǎy sìp bàat máj</u> Do you have as much as 10 Baht change?
3. kháw, nən fàak, thanakhaan, láan bàat he, money in the bank, one million baht	<u>kháw mii nən fàak thanakhaan thǎy</u> <u>láan bàat máj</u> Does he have as much as one million Baht in the bank?
4. roonrian níi, nákrían, róój khon. This school, students, 100.	<u>roonrian níi mii nákrían thǎy</u> <u>róój khon máj</u> Are there as many as 100 students in this school?
5. hōnsamùt níi, nánsǎy, hāa róój. This library, books, 500.	<u>hōnsamùt níi mii nánsǎy thǎy</u> <u>hāa róój lēm máj</u> Are there as many as 500 books in this library?
6. khun, weelaa, khrǎy chūamoon. You, time, half an hour.	<u>khun mii weelaa thǎy khrǎy</u> <u>chūamoon máj</u> Do you have as much as half an hour?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm mii <u>bénjôj</u> mâj thǎy <u>róoj</u> <u>bàat</u> . I don't have as much as 100 Baht in change.
1. nèn, róoj bàat Money, one hundred Baht.	phǒm mii <u>nèn</u> mâj thǎy <u>róoj</u> <u>bàat</u> . I don't have as much as 100 Baht.
2. nèn fàak thanakhaan, nỳn phan bàat. Money in the bank, 1000 baht.	phǒm mii <u>nèn fàak thanakhaan</u> <u>mâj thǎy nỳn phan bàat</u> . I don't have as much as one thousand Baht in the bank.
3. nákrian, róoj khon. Students, 100.	phǒm mii <u>nákrian</u> mâj thǎy <u>róoj</u> <u>khon</u> . I don't have as many as 100 students.
4. khon chûaj, síp khon. helpers, ten.	phǒm mii <u>khon chûaj</u> mâj thǎy <u>síp</u> <u>khon</u> . I don't have as many as 10 helpers.
5. weelaa lýa, nỳn dyan. time left, one month	phǒm mii <u>weelaa lýa</u> mâj thǎy <u>nỳn</u> <u>dyan</u> . I have less than a month left.

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw sǎa khâa châw bâan dyan la mâj thǎy sǎam phan bàat.  
He pays for the rent less than three thousand Baht a month.
2. kháw mii nèn fàak thanakhaan mâj thǎy láan bàat.  
He doesn't have as much as one million Baht in the bank.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. kháw mií weelaa lýa ìik mâj thŷn dyan.  
He has only less than a month left.
4. phǒm thamnaan thŷnŷi (maa) dâj mâj thŷn pií.  
I have worked here less than a year.
5. kháw phên sŷy rót khan níi dâj mâj thŷn pií.  
He's just bought this car less than a year ago.

### d) Substitutuion Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khǒo jyym nŷn sák <u>jŷisìp</u> <u>bàat</u> dâj máj May I borrow twenty baht?
1. nánsŷyphim, pradŷaw.	khǒo jyym <u>nánsŷyphim</u> sák <u>pradŷaw</u> May I borrow your newspaper for a few minutes?
2. rót, khrŷn chŷamoon.	khǒo jyym <u>rót</u> sák <u>khrŷn</u> <u>chŷamoon</u> , dâj máj May I borrow your car for only half an hour?
3. pàakaa, nŷn, dâam.	khǒo jyym <u>pàakaa</u> sák dâam, dâj máj May I borrow a pen?
4. nánsŷy lêm níi, sǒn wan.	khǒo jyym <u>nánsŷy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>níi</u> sák <u>sǒn</u> <u>wan</u> , câj máj May I borrow this book for two days?
5. nánsŷy dii dii, sǒn lêm.	khǒo jyym <u>nánsŷy</u> <u>dii</u> <u>dii</u> sák <u>sǒn</u> <u>lêm</u> , dâj máj May I borrow two good books?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

e) Transformation Drill (Form a statement based on the exchange.)

Pattern 1 and 2

Pattern 3

Example I:

A: khǎo jyym nən sák sĭp  
bàat, dâj máj  
May I borrow 10 baht?

khun B hâj nən khun A jyym sĭp  
bàat  
Mr. B lent Mr. A ten baht.

B: dâj  
O.K.

Example II:

A: khǎo jyym nən sák sĭp  
bàat, dâj máj  
Could I borrow ten  
baht from you?

khun A khǎo jyym nən khun B sĭp  
bàat tĕe khun B mâj hâj jyym  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a ten baht  
loan, but Mr. B won't lend it  
to him.

B: mâj dâj  
No

1. A: khǎo jyym pàakaa sák  
dâam, dâj máj  
Could I borrow a pen?

khun A khǎo jyym pàakaa khun  
B tĕe khun B mâj hâj  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for loan of  
a pen, but Mr. B won't lend  
it to him.

B: mâj dâj  
No

2. A: khǎo jyym nânsÿyphim  
chabàp níi nòoj,  
dâjmáj  
May I borrow this  
newspaper?

khun B hâj khun A jyym  
nânsÿyphim

Mr. B lent Mr. A a newspaper.

B: dâj  
O.K.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. A: khǎo jyym nánsǎy sák  
sǎoŋ lêm, dâj máj  
may I borrow two
- B: dâj  
Yes.
4. A: khǎo jyym pàakaa sák  
dâam, dâj máj.  
May I borrow a pen?
- B: mâj dâj  
No.
5. A: khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ  
phimdlit sák dǎaw,  
dâj máj  
May I borrow your  
typewriter for a few  
minutes?
- B: aw si khráp  
You may take it.
6. A: khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ àt  
théep sák chûamooŋ,  
dâj máj  
May I borrow the tape  
recorder for an hour?
- B: khǎothôot dûaj, phǎm  
tǎoŋ cháj khráp  
Sorry, I have to use  
it.
- khun B hâj khun A khǎo jyym  
nánsǎy sǎoŋ lêm.  
Mr. B lent Mr. A two books.
- khun A khǎo jyym pàakaa khun  
B tɛɛ khun B mâj hâj.  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a loan of  
a pen, but Mr. B won't lend  
one to him.
- khun B hâj khun A khǎo jyym  
khrÿaŋ phimdlit  
Mr. B lent Mr. A a typewriter.
- khun A khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ àt  
théep khun B tɛɛ khun B mâj  
hâj.  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a tape  
recorder, but Mr. B won't lend  
it to him.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun coon kháw mâj jàak paj  
John doesn't want to go.
2. lûuk phǒm kɛɛ chɔ̌ɔp khɔ̌ɔŋ wǎanwǎan  
My children like sweet things.
3. naaj phǒm kháw mâj chɔ̌ɔp háj phǒm paj sǎaj  
My boss doesn't like me to be late.
4. phanrajaa phǒm kɛɛ chɔ̌ɔp bǎan lǎŋ níi  
My wife likes this house.
5. naajók thǎan mâj wǎan  
The prime minister is busy.
6. dèk khon nán kɛɛ maa jùu thǎinǎi naan  
That child has been here a long time.

### g) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. chaamsalàt bajníi, máaj This salad bowl, wood	chaamsalàt bajníi tham dūaj máaj. This salad bowl is made of wood.
2. khǎn bajníi, nɛn This bowl, silver	khǎn bajníi tham dūaj nɛn. This bowl is made of silver.
3. tó tuaníi, máajsàk This table, teak	tó tuaníi tham dūaj máajsàk. This table is made of teak.
4. thūaj bajníi, pláatsatik This cup, plastic	thūaj bajníi tham dūaj pláatsatik This cup is made of plastic.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. klòŋ burìi bajnán,<br>thooŋ<br>This cigarette box,<br>gold | klòŋ burìi bajnán tham dūaj<br>thooŋ.<br>This cigarette box is made of<br>gold. |
| 6. thŭŋ baj nán,<br>kradaat náŋsýyphim<br>This bag, newspaper | thŭŋ bajnán tham dūaj<br>kradaat náŋsýyphim.<br>This bag is made of newspaper.  |

### h) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. fŷimyy kháw dii
2. fŷimyy chāaŋ tàtsýa  
khonníi dii
3. fŷimyy chāaŋ tàtphóm  
khonníi māj dii.
4. fŷimyy chāaŋ thooŋ  
khonníi dii.
5. fŷimyy chāaŋ thàajrūup  
khonníi māj dii.
6. fŷimyy chāaŋ máaj  
khonníi dii.
7. fŷimyy chāaŋ thóm  
khonníi dii.

#### Pattern 2

- kháw fŷimyy dii  
His work is good.
- chāaŋ tàtsýa khonníi fŷimyy  
dii.  
This tailor (dressmaker) is  
good.
- chāaŋ tàtphóm khonníi fŷimyy  
māj dii.  
This barber is not good.
- chāaŋ thooŋ khonníi fŷimyy  
dii.  
This jeweler is good.
- chāaŋ thàajrūup khonníi fŷimyy  
māj dii.  
This photographer is not good.
- chāaŋ máaj khonníi fŷimyy dii.  
This carpenter is good.
- chāaŋ thóm khonníi fŷimyy dii.  
This nielloware maker is good.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. fĭimyy chĕan kĕsalàk khonnĭi dii. chĕan kĕsalàk khonnĭi fĭimyy dii.

This carver is good.

1) Completion Drill

(Complete the sentences with a compound beginning as chĕan.)

1. khon thĭi mii aachĭip tham khryānryan rĭak wĕa.....  
.....(Answer: chĕanmĕaj).  
A person who earns his living by making furniture is called  
.....(Answer: a cabinet maker).
2. khon thĭi mii aachĭip tàtphǒm rĭak wĕa.....  
.....(Answer: chĕanthàtphǒm).  
A person who earns his living by cutting one's hair is called  
.....(Answer: a barber).
3. khon thĭi mii aachĭip tàtsĕa rĭak wĕa.....  
.....(Answer: chĕantàtsĕa).  
A person who earns his living by making clothes is called  
.....(Answer: a tailor).
4. khon thĭi mii aachĭip tham khryānthoŋ rĭak wĕa.....  
.....(Answer: chĕanthoŋ).  
A person who earns a living by making jewelry or gold ornaments is called.....(Answer: a goldsmith).
5. khon thĭi mii aachĭip thaŋ kĕsalàk rĭak wĕa.....  
.....(Answer: chĕan kĕsalàk).  
A person who earns his living by carving things is called  
.....(Answer: a carver).
6. khon thĭi mii aachĭip thaŋ wĭthhajú rĭak wĕa.....  
.....(Answer: chĕanwĭthhajú).  
A person who earns his living by working in the field of radio is called.....(Answer: a radio repairman).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. khon thîi mii aachîp thaaj fajfáa rîak wâa.....  
 .....(Answer: châan fajfáa).

A person who earns his living in the field of electricity is called.....(Answer: an electrician).

### j) Sentence Construction Drill

	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Continued Pattern</u>
	khun ca phàan ráan khǎaj jaa máj	sýy jaa	fàak <u>sýy jaa</u> dûaj.
	Are you going by the drug store?	Buy some medicine.	May I ask you to buy some medicine for me?
1.	khun ca phàan talàat máj	sýy khǒon	fàak <u>sýy khǒon</u> dûaj.
	Are you going to go by the market?	Buy some- thing.	I'd like you to buy something for me.
2.	khun ca wé hōnkon máj	sýy klōn thaaaj rūup	fàak <u>sýy klōn thaaaj rūup sak klōn</u> dûaj.
	Are you going to stop over in Hongkong?	Buy a camera.	I'd like you to buy a camera for me.
3.	khun ca paj talàat rǎkhráp	sýy kàpkhâaw	fàak <u>sýy kàpkhâaw</u> dûaj.
	You're going to the market?	Buy me some food.	May I ask you to buy some food for me?
4.	khun ca phàan prajsanîi máj	sòn còtmǎaj	fàak <u>sòn còt mǎaj</u> dûaj
	Are you going to go by the post office?	Mail a letter.	Could you mail a letter for me?
5.	khun ca paj ráan kaafɛɛ rýy	sýy kaafɛɛ	fàak <u>sýy kaafɛɛ</u> dûaj.
	You're going to the coffee shop?	Buy some coffee.	Could you get some coffee for me?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                  |               |  |
|----------------------------------|---------------|--|
| 6. khun ca paj<br>thanakhaan rŷy | lêek nən      | fàak <u>lêek nən</u> dŷaj.             |
| You're going to<br>the bank?     | Change money. | Could you change some<br>money for me? |

### k) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun ca sŷy araj paj fàak khaw	nənsŷy dii dii sák sŷon lêm.	phŷm ca sŷy nənsŷy dii dii paj fàak khaw sák sŷon lêm.
What are you going to buy (as a present) for him?	Two good books.	I'll buy two good books for him.
2. khun ca sŷy araj paj fàak phanrajaa khun	sŷa sŷaj sŷaj	phŷm ca sŷy sŷa sŷaj sŷaj paj fàak phanrajaa
What are you going to buy (as a souve- nir) for your wife?	Beautiful blouses (dresses)	I'll buy beautiful dresses for my wife.
3. weelaa khun klàp paj bāan, khun ca sŷy araj paj fàak lŷuk sǎaw khun	khŷon lêm	phŷm ca sŷy khŷon lêm paj fàak lŷuksǎaw phŷm.
When you go home, what are you going to buy (as a souve- nir) for your daughter?	Toys.	I'm going to buy some toys for my daughter.
4. weelaa khun klàp paj myanthat, khun ca sŷy araj paj fàak phanrajaa khun	khrŷančaj fajfǎa	phŷm ca sŷy khrŷančaj fajfǎa paj fàak phanrajaa phŷm.
When you go back to Thailand, what are you going to buy (as a present) for your wife?	Electrical appliances	I'll buy some elec- trical appliances for my wife.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>5. weelaa khun paj tookiaw,<br/>khun ca sýy araj<br/>maa fàak phǒm bǎan.</p>                                 | <p>wíthajú<br/>jǐipùn an<br/>léklék,<br/>nỳn khrỳan</p> | <p>phǒm ca sýy wíthajú<br/>jǐipùn an léklék maa<br/>fàak khun nỳn khrỳan</p> |
| <p>When you go to<br/>Tokyo, what things<br/>are you going to buy<br/>(as souvenirs from<br/>Tokyo) for me?</p> | <p>A rather<br/>small Jap-<br/>anese radio</p>          | <p>I'll buy you a rather<br/>small Japanese radio.</p>                       |

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun rúucàk ráan diidi bǎanmáj  Do you know any good stores?</p>	<p>rǎan thaj najlakháp  Yes, "Thai" store's the one.</p>
<p>2. rót khǒnkhun jùu thǐnǎj  Where is your car?</p>	<p>nǐi najkhráp  Right here.</p>
<p>3. khun sǒmsàk khonnǎj  Which one is Mr. Somsak?</p>	<p>khonnán najkhráp  That one there.</p>
<p>4. khun hěn nǎnsýy phǒm máj  Did you see my book?</p>	<p>jùu nǎn najkhráp  Right there (Don't you see it?)</p>
<p>5. kháw maa rýplàaw  Did he come?</p>	<p>maa, jyyn jùu nǎn najkhráp.  Yes, he's standing right there. (Don't you see him?)</p>

### m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun ca phàan talàat máj. fàak sýy khǒn dūaj.  
Are you going to go buy the market? Could you get me something?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. khun ca wé tookiaw máj. fàak sýy khǒon dûaj.  
Are you going to stop over Tokyo? Could I have you buy something for me?
3. khun ca paj sýy kaafes rěhá. fàak sýy dûaj nỳn thûaj.  
You are going to buy coffee? Could you get a cup for me too?
4. khun ca paj prajsanii rěhá. fàak sòn còtmăaj dûaj.  
You are going to the post office? Could you mail this letter for me?
5. khun ca paj hăa khun cim rě. fàak nánssýy lêmní paj hâj khaw dûaj.  
You are going to see Jim? Could you take this book to him also?
6. khun ca paj ráan khăajphăa rě. chûaj sýy phăa hâj dûaj.  
You are going to the fabric shop? Could you buy some material for me too?
7. khun ca paj bân kháw, châj máj. chûaj bòok kháw dûaj wăa phǒm paj mǎj dâj.  
You are going to his house, aren't you? Please tell him that I can't go.
8. khun ca paj hăa naajnăa rě. chûaj thăam kháw dûaj wăa bân lănnán khăachăw thăwrăj.  
You are going to see the agent? Please ask him (also) how much the rent for that house is.
9. khun ca hăa khun prasít rě. chûaj aw nánssýy lêmní paj hâj kháw dûaj.  
You are going to see Mr. Prasit? Please take this book to him also.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 40.5 EXERCISES

1. Pairs of students will ask and answer questions of each other eliciting information like the following:
  - (a) Does one student have as much/many as \$3,000; 50 baht; 2,000 books; etc.
  - (b) Does one student have as much as \$3,000; 36,000 baht; 40,000 baht; \$100,000 deposited in the bank?
2. Two students discuss their monthly salary. The first member of the pair indicates that he finds his salary quite small. The second student is impressed by the size of it.
3. Two students discuss the length, size, or cost of various objects. In each case one takes the position that the amount given is not very much, while the other takes the position that it is quite a lot.
4. Discuss the monthly bill for rent, gas, water, and electricity in the same manner as in 3.
5. Student A asks to borrow various objects (\$10, a pen, 2 books, his car, a tape recorder, a typewriter, etc.). Student B indicates that he will lend A some of the items, but not all.
6. Student C asks Student B what Student A wanted to borrow and if he lent these things to him. When B indicates that he lent him some of the things, C asks why he didn't lend A the other objects.
7. Student A asks Student B what material some object (a table, a chair, a shirt, a glass, a tie, etc.) is made of. B responds. Then A asks him if it is hand-made or machine made.
8. Students will discuss the craftsmanship of various kinds in different countries (woodcarving in Germany, nielloware in Thailand, etc.)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. Students will find out from the instructor what the Thais call sculptors, watch repairmen, hair dressers, weavers, boat builders, house painters, carpenters, printers, etc.
10. Student A asks Student B if he is going to some particular place. When B indicates that he is, A asks him to do some thing (buy something, etc.) for him, indicating that since he is going there anyway it won't be any trouble for him to do him a favor.
11. One student asks another what he plans to buy (as a present) in Thailand for his mother, or his older sister, or his material aunt, or some other relative.
12. Student A asks about the location of some object, or the identity of some person in the classroom. Student B indicates his surprise and points it out to him.
13. Student A plays the part of a bank teller and Student B that of a customer. They discuss withdrawing and depositing money in the bank.

(Below is a facsimile of a Thai check.)

	เลขที่ .....
ธนาคารแห่งประเทศไทย .....	
จ่ายให้ .....	ป .....
จำนวนเงิน .....	บาท
	.....

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 40.6 VOCABULARY

aachfip	profession
àt	to tape, to copy
əə	by the way
(khít òok (nýk)	out (a completive verb)
bèek	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bèek nən	to get money (from the bank)
châaŋ-	A person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds.
châaŋ kèesalàk (khon)	carver
châaŋ máaj (khon)	carpenter
châaŋ tàtphǒm (khon)	barber
châaŋ tàtsýa (khon)	tailor
châaŋ thàajrûup (khon)	photographer
châaŋ thǒm (khon)	nielloware maker
châaŋ thoŋ (khon)	jeweler
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chiaw rě	that's a lot of (something)
ciŋ ná	That's true.
dûaj	also, too, as well
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

f`aak nən	to deposit money (in the bank)
fŷi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
hâj jyym	to let someone borrow, to lend
hônkon	Hong Kong
jé/jéjé	to be a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
kεε	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, intimates, persons of equal status
k`εsalàk	to carve
khǎnən	silver bowl
kháw	he, she, they (third person) not intimate, about equal status
khít òok	to figure out
khōo jyym/jyym	to borrow
khōon lēn (jàan)	toys
khryān (cák) (an)	machine
khryān àtthéep (an)	tape recorder
khÿn nən	to cash a check
kòon	used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
kracòk (baan, phèn)	'glass'
lèek	'iron, steel'
lòot fajfáa (lòot)	light bulb
máaj	wood

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

máaj sàk	teak
myy (myy)	hand
naajók naajók rátthamontri	(thân) } prime minister (short form) prime minister (official name)
naanaaphan	Nanaphan (name of a shop)
nýk òk	think about, can recall, can remember; to be able to recall to memory
ṅənbèək	a deposit (in a bank)
phaa	to take, escort
pláatsatìk	plastic
phēṅ	just (immediately before)
rəɛṅthian	watt (measure of electricity)
sǐnkháa thaj	Thai merchandise
syy...{ paj maa ...fàak	to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone
tāṅ	as much as, as many as
tàt	to cut
thàaj rūup	take pictures
thàanfajchaaj (kôn)	flashlight batteries
tham dūaj.....	made of
thân	he, she, they (third person) least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker
thǒm	to make nielloware
thoṅ	gold
thýṅ	is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached

FSI Language Publications Available from  
 Superintendent of Documents  
 Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

* Amharic	(Units 1-50)	\$2.25	* Thai	(Units 1-20)	
* Amharic	(Units 51-60)	\$2.50	* Thai	(Units 21-40)	
* Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	\$2.00	* Turkish	(Units 1-30)	\$3.75
* Cambodian	(Units 46-90)		* Turkish	(Units 31-50)	\$2.25
* Cantonese	(Units 1-30)		* Twi	(Units 1-20)	\$1.25
* Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	\$1.75	* Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	\$2.75
* French (set)	(Units 1-12 )	\$4.00	* Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	\$1.50
	(Units 13-24 )		* Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	\$2.75
* Fula	(Units 1-40)	\$2.75			
* German	(Units 1-12)	\$2.00			
* German	(Units 13-24)	\$1.75			
* Greek	(Vol. I)	\$1.75	* Finnish Graded Reader		\$4.50
* Greek	(Vol. II)	\$1.00	* French Supplemental Exercises		\$3.25
* Greek	(Vol. III)	\$2.00	Hindi-An Active Introduction		
* Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	\$5.00	* Hungarian Graded Reader		\$3.75
* Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	\$2.00	Indonesian Newspaper Reader		\$1.75
* Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	\$1.75	* Luganda Pretraining Program		
* Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	\$2.75	Modern Written Arabic		\$4.00
* Kituba	(Units 1-35)	\$2.25	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Korean	(Vol. I)	\$3.00	(Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)		\$0.75
* Korean	(Vol. II)	\$4.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Lao	(Vol. I)		(Student Workbook-Vol. I)		\$2.25
* Lingala	(Units 1-24)	\$2.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	\$2.25	(Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)		
* Moré	(Units 1-48)	\$1.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	\$3.50	(Student Workbook-Vol. II)		
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	\$4.00	* Swahili General Conversation		\$0.75
Shona	(Units 1-49)	\$2.50	* Swahili Geography		\$0.65
* Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15 )	\$12.25	Thai Reference Grammar		\$1.25
	(Units 16-30 )		Turkish Graded Reader		
* Spanish	(Units 31-45)	\$3.25	Vietnamese Familiarization		
* Spanish	(Units 46-55)	\$4.00	Course		\$1.75
* Swahili	(Units 1-150)	\$3.00	Yoruba Intermediate Texts		\$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

\* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.